## Technical Bulletin

#### Reissued: 28-Jun-11

| Model: V-C3 Date: 11-Dec | c-09 No.: RD081001c |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
|                          |                     |

#### **RTB Reissue**

#### The items in *bold italics* have been corrected.

| Subject: Firmware Release Note: Printer             |                 |               | Prepared by: T. Toriumi |                         |
|---|-----------------|---------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                 |               |                         |                         |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting | Part informat | tion                    | Action required         |
|   | 🗌 Mechanical    | Electrical    |                         | Service manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec  | eive                    | Retrofit information    |
|   | Product Safety  | Other (Firmv  | vare)                   | 🛛 Tier 2                |

#### This RTB has been issued to announce the firmware release information for the Printer.

| Version | Program No. | Effective Date           | Availability of RFU |
|---------|-------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1.03    | D0815789C   | March 2011 production    | Available           |
| 1.02    | D0815789B   | November 2010 production | Available           |
| 1.00    | D0815789A   | 1st Mass production      | Available           |

#### Note: Definition of Availability of RFU via @Remote

"Available": The firmware can be updated via RFU or SD card.

| Version | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected  |
|---------|---|
| 1.03    | <ol> <li>Symptom corrected:         <ol> <li>PS jobs with a large number of images might be unexpectedly reset.</li> <li>Batches of jobs being printed from the device hard disk (Locked Print jobs for example) might be interrupted by Normal Print jobs.</li> </ol> </li> <li>Any job (compressed or not compressed) might cause the printer application to stall if "Menu &gt; System &gt; Print Compressed Data" = ON.</li> <li>If a job is submitted while the Printer application is still in the process of starting up, the Printer application might stall with "Processing" displayed on the operation panel.</li> </ol> |
|         | Other changes:<br>1. The name of the user who deletes a Stored Print job is now recorded in the<br>Access Log.  |
| 1.02    | Symptom corrected:<br>Jobs not containing any PJL commands are held by the device and not printed<br>until another job is submitted or a button is pressed on the device. This<br>occurred if the device entered in energy saver mode immediately after printing<br>a diagnostics page (List/Test Print, etc.).   |
|         | Other Changes:<br>A new BitSwitch#9-4 has been added. When set to '1', if multiple collated<br>copies are printed, the device no longer responds to PJL USTATUS with the<br>number of pages in the current copy. Instead the device will return the total<br>number of pages for all copies.  |
| 1.00    | 1st Mass production   |



Reissued: 17-Nov-10

Model: v-c3

Date: 11-Dec-09

No.: RD081002a

| Subject: Firmware Belease Note: RemoteFax           |  |                | Prenare | d by: T. Toriumi        |
|---|--|----------------|---------|-------------------------|
|   | Subject. Filliwale nelease Note. Nellioterax |                |         |                         |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |  |                |         |                         |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting                              | Part informat  | tion    | Action required         |
|   | Mechanical                                   | Electrical     |         | Service manual revision |
|   | Paper path                                   | Transmit/rec   | eive    | Retrofit information    |
|   | Product Safety                               | 🛛 Other (Firmw | vare)   | 🖂 Tier 2                |

This RTB has been issued to announce the firmware release information for the **RemoteFax.** 

| Version  | Program No. | Effective Date           |  |
|----------|-------------|--------------------------|--|
| 02.00.00 | D0815774B   | November 2010 production |  |
| 01.00.00 | D0815774A   | 1st Mass production      |  |

| Version  | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected   |
|----------|--|
| 02.00.00 | Symptoms corrected:  |
|          | <ol> <li>IP-FAX functions (both sending and receiving) do not work under the<br/>following conditions:</li> <li>The other machine does not support or cannot use IP-FAX</li> <li>The connection refusal packet from the other machine arrives after the<br/>response time-out has expired</li> </ol> |
| 01.00.00 | 1st Mass production  |



#### Reissued: 28-Apr-16

| Model: V-C3 | Date: 11-Dec-09 | No.: RD081003c |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|

#### **RTB Reissue**

The items in bold italics have been corrected or added.

| Subject: Firmware Release Note: Fax |                                |                | Prepared by: K. Hamada |                         |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Tech S                    | ervice Sect., MFP/Printer Tech | n Service Dept |                        |                         |
| Classification:                     | Troubleshooting                | Part informat  | tion                   | Action required         |
|                                     | 🗌 Mechanical                   | Electrical     |                        | Service manual revision |
|                                     | Paper path                     | Transmit/rec   | eive                   | Retrofit information    |
|                                     | Product Safety                 | 🛛 Other (Firmv | vare)                  | 🛛 Tier 2                |

This RTB has been issued to announce the firmware release information for the Fax.

| Version  | Program No. | Effective Date        | Availability of RFU |
|----------|-------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 04.00.00 | D0815773D   | April 2016 production | Available           |
| 03.00.00 | D0815773C   | Jun 2012 production   | Available           |
| 02.00.00 | D0815773B   | March 2011 production | Available           |
| 01.00.00 | D0815773A   | 1st Mass production   | Available           |

Note: Definition of Availability of RFU via @Remote "Available": The firmware can be updated via RFU or SD card.

| Version  | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected  |
|----------|---|
| 04.00.00 | Symptom corrected:  |
|          | A stored reception document is deleted if a paper loading error (incorrect    |
|          | loading or tray overload) occurs when the user tries to print it out.         |
| 03.00.00 | Symptom corrected:  |
|          | The following may occur when using an SDK application.                        |
|          | <ul> <li>The FAX function does not appear in the User Tools menu</li> </ul>   |
|          | <ul> <li>The FAX function cannot be accessed from the LCD</li> </ul>          |
|          | - The machine cannot be rebooted from inside WIM, and the following message   |
|          | is displayed:   |
|          | "This device is currently in use by other functions. Please try again later." |
| 02.00.00 | Minor bug correction  |
| 01.00.00 | 1st Mass production   |

## Technical Bulletin

#### Reissued: 18-Mar-16

| Model: V-C3 | Date: 11-Dec-09 | No.: RD081004h |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|

**RTB Reissue** 

The items in bold italics have been corrected.

| Subject: Firmware Release Note: Engine                      |                 | Prepared by: Y. Miyamoto |       |                         |
|---|-----------------|--------------------------|-------|-------------------------|
| From: 2nd Tech Service Sect., MFP/Printer Tech Service Dept |                 |                          |       |                         |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting | Part informat            | ion   | Action required         |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrical               |       | Service manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec             | eive  | Retrofit information    |
|   | Product Safety  | 🛛 Other (Firmv           | vare) | 🛛 Tier 2                |

This RTB has been issued to announce the firmware release information for the Engine.

| Version | Program No. | Effective Date               | Availability of RFU |
|---------|-------------|------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1.11:06 | D0815407G   | January 2016 production      | Available           |
| 1.10:06 | D0815407F   | February 2013 production     | Available           |
| 1.09:06 | D0815407E   | August 2012 production       | Available           |
| 1.08:06 | D0815407D   | July 2011 production         | Available           |
| 1.07:06 | D0815407C   | November 2010 production     | Available           |
| 1.06:06 | D0815407B   | June 2010 production         | Available           |
| 1.05:06 | D0815407A   | April 2010 production        | Available           |
| 1.04:06 | D0815407    | March 2010 production(except | Available           |
|         |             | for D081/D082-29 models)     |                     |
| 1.03:04 | D0815402C   | February 2010 production     | Available           |
| 1.02:04 | D0815402B   | 1st Mass production          | Available           |

Note: Definition of Availability of RFU via @Remote

"Available": The firmware can be updated via RFU or SD card.

| Version | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected  |
|---------|---|
| 1.11:06 | Symptom corrected:  |
|         | <ul> <li>Toner scattering from the development unit.</li> </ul>                 |
|         | <ul> <li>Image density is low.</li> </ul>                                       |
|         | NOTE: SP setting is required for this firmware to take effect. See RTB          |
|         | RD081049f for detail.   |
| 1.10:06 | Symptom corrected:  |
|         | 1. Paper stuck between the drawer unit and PFU may tear when the drawer unit is |
|         | pulled out, in cases where a fusing jam has occurred with paper fed from Tray   |
|         |   |
|         | 2. A noise can be heard if paper is fed from Trays 1, 2, or 3, and SP1-903-005  |
|         | (Bypass I nick Mode) is enabled.  |
|         | 3. Bug related the following SC fixed.  |
|         | - Development Intake Fan Error : SC536(Y)、SC537(C)、SC538(M)、                    |
|         | SC539(K)  |
|         | <ul> <li>Development intake fan error : SC570</li> </ul>                        |
| 1.09:06 | Symptom corrected:  |
|         | 1. Paper stuck between the drawer unit and PFU may tear when the drawer unit is |
|         | pulled out, in cases where a fusing jam has occurred with paper fed from Tray   |



#### Reissued: 18-Mar-16

| Model: v- | C3   | Date: 11-Dec-09  | No.: RD081004h   |  |
|-----------|--|--|--|--|
| Version   | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected   |  |  |  |
|           | <ol> <li>A noise can be heard if paper is fed<br/>(Bypass Thick Mode) is enabled.</li> </ol>   | from Trays 1, 2, or 3,   | and SP1-903-005  |  |
| 1.08:06   | <ul> <li>Symptom corrected:</li> <li>1. SC670 occurs when scanning an origin</li> <li>2. The printer might stall with "Printing.<br/>jobs in a row are stapled or punched.</li> </ul>  | nal with the ADF.<br>" displayed on the op   | eration panel if 2   |  |
| 1.07:06   | Symptom Corrected:   |  |  |  |
|           | <ol> <li>Pages are printed out in the wrong orc<br/>printed out) under the following conditi</li> <li>The same paper size is loaded in the tr<br/>(paper feed direction)</li> <li>Two duplex print jobs 2 or more pages</li> <li>The Paper End condition occurs while</li> </ol>   | ler (two print jobs are m<br>ions.<br>wo paper trays with the<br>long are sent to the prin<br>feeding paper for the fir                          | ixed together and<br>same orientation<br>nter<br>st job              |  |
| 1.06:06   | Symptom Corrected:   |  | -  |  |
|           | <ol> <li>Paper Jam (code64) occurs when the p<br/>tray.<br/>Example: Feeding A4SEF after feeding</li> <li>Countermeasure against SC360.</li> <li>When the double-sided originals are co<br/>color reproduction on the front side is c</li> <li>When DF Dust Check (SP4-202-001) is<br/>Scan may fail under some setup condit</li> <li>Other Change:</li> </ol> | paper size is changed fr<br>g one piece of A4LEF.<br>oped with dual side scar<br>lifferent from that on the<br>s set to "1(ON)", duplex<br>tion. | rom the bypass<br>nning mode, the<br>e rear side.<br>scan with Fiery |  |
|           | 1. SP3004 (Vtref: Disp/Set) is available.<br>IMPORTANT NOTICE:   |  |  |  |
| 1.05 :06  | Do not change the value of SP3004, until y<br>Symptom Corrected:<br>Toner cartridge cannot be detected (D081/  | /ou install this engine fir<br>/D082-29 only).   | mware or newer.  |  |
|           | Information for only D081/D082-29 models<br>If the firmware currently installed in the ma<br>1.04a (program No.D0815407_LR0429) or<br>the Engine firmware this new version (Ver.   | s:<br>chine is the temporary s<br><sup>-</sup> Ver. 1.03:04 or older),<br>1.05:06).  | solution (Ver.<br>be sure to update                                  |  |
|           | Other Changes:<br>Paper feeding speed is modified when Mu  | ılti Folding Unit FD5000   | is installed.  |  |
|           | IMPORTANT:<br>If you install this new version (Ver. 1.05:06<br>NEVER turn the main power switch OFF o<br>update. If you do, the VBCU board can bre<br>power is turned ON). If you do this acciden  | i) directly from Ver. 1.03<br>r unplug the power corc<br>eak (SC670 occurs the r<br>ntally, replace the VBCU                                     | :04 or older,<br>I during the<br>next time the<br>I board.           |  |
|           | Note:  | which were applied in ve   | er 1.04·06   |  |



#### Reissued: 18-Mar-16

| Model: V- | C3  | Date: 11-Dec-09   | No.: RD081004h  |
|-----------|---|---|---|
| Version   | Modified Points or  | Symptom Corrected   |   |
| 1.04 :06  | <ol> <li>Symptom Corrected:</li> <li>Improve the reliability of stapling with F</li> <li>Improve the reliability of scanner control</li> <li>Improve the reliability of document fold</li> <li>SC142 (White level detection error) approximate turned ON</li> </ol> | inisher SR5000.<br>In sub scan direction.<br>Ing with Multi-Folding U<br>pears when the main po | nit FD5000.<br>ower switch is                         |
|           | Note:<br>Except for the D081/D082-29, this firmward<br>production level machines. This is because<br>toner cartridge detection on these models.<br>on the Ricoh firmware download site).  | e has been released on<br>e this version contains a<br>(Therefore, this versior                 | ly for mass-<br>a bug related to<br>a does not appear |
| 1.03:04   | Minor bug corrections.  |   |   |
| 1.02:04   | 1st Mass production   |   |   |

## Technical Bulletin

#### Reissued: 19-Jun-12

Model: v-c3

Date: 11-Dec-09

No.: RD081006b

#### **RTB Reissue**

The items in bold italics have been added.

| Subject: Firmware Release Note: Network DocBox              |                 | Prepared by: C. Shimaji |       |                         |
|---|-----------------|-------------------------|-------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/Printer Tech Service Dept |                 |                         |       |                         |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting | Part informat           | tion  | Action required         |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrical              |       | Service manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec            | eive  | Retrofit information    |
|   | Product Safety  | 🛛 Other (Firmv          | vare) | 🛛 Tier 2                |

This RTB has been issued to announce the firmware release information for the **Network** DocBox.

| Version | Program No. | Effective Date           | Availability of RFU |
|---------|-------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1.03    | D0815772C   | June 2012 production     | Available           |
| 1.02    | D0815772B   | February 2012 production | Available           |
| 1.01    | D0815772A   | 1st Mass production      | Available           |

Note: Definition of Availability of RFU via @Remote "Available": The firmware can be updated via RFU or SD card.

| Version | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected  |
|---------|---|
| 1.03    | Symptom corrected:<br>The captured user name might be garbled. This occurs if User<br>Administrator Authentication is enabled and if the user's "Key Display"<br>setting is 16 bytes in length.   |
| 1.02    | <ul> <li>Symptom corrected:</li> <li>1. If the Capture Priority setting is enabled (User Tools/Counter &gt; System Settings &gt; Administrator Tools &gt; Capture Priority), repeated use of the MLB (Media Link Board) might result in the device stalling.</li> </ul>                         |
|         | <ul> <li>Other changes:</li> <li>1. Scan to file would not allow the creation of PDF files if the "Master Password" setting was configured but the "Document Password" setting was not. After the fix, Scan to file will now allow the creation of PDF files under these conditions.</li> </ul> |
|         | This firmware is dependent on the following firmware modules. Please be sure to update all of them:<br>Network DocBox Ver 1.02 (D0815772B)  |
|         | Scanner Ver 01.06 (D0815787E)<br>Web Uapl Ver 1.02 (D0815776C)  |
| 1.01    | 1st Mass production   |



#### Reissued: 02-Apr-12

| Model: <b>v-c3</b> | Date: 11-Dec-09 | No.: RD081007b |
|--------------------|-----------------|----------------|

#### **RTB Reissue**

The items in bold italics have been corrected or added.

| Subject: Firmware Release Note: Language Install            |                 | Prepared by: C. Shimaji |       |                         |
|---|-----------------|-------------------------|-------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/Printer Tech Service Dept |                 |                         |       |                         |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting | Part informat           | tion  | Action required         |
|   | 🗌 Mechanical    | Electrical              |       | Service manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec            | eive  | Retrofit information    |
|   | Product Safety  | Other (Firmw            | vare) | 🛛 Tier 2                |

This RTB has been issued to announce the firmware release information for the Language Install.

| Version | Program No. | Effective Date        | Availability of RFU |
|---------|-------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1.04    | D0815451B   | May 2012 production   | Not available       |
| 1.03    | D0815451A   | March 2011 production | Not available       |
| 1.01    | D0815451    | 1st Mass production   | Not available       |

Note: Definition of Availability of RFU via @Remote

"Available": The firmware can be updated via RFU or SD card.

| Version | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected   |
|---------|--|
| 1.04    | Other changes:<br>A software button was added to the Copier screen, which can be assigned<br>to specific SDK applications.<br>Note: In order to utilize this change, the SDK application itself must also<br>support this functionality. For details, see the Release Notes for each<br>application. |
| 1.03    | Minor bug correction.  |
| 1.01    | 1st Mass production  |

## Technical Bulletin

#### Reissued: 01-Apr-16

| Model: V-C3 | Date: 11-Dec-09 | No.: RD081010d |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|

#### **RTB Reissue**

The items in bold italics have been corrected or added.

| Subject: Firmware Release Note: GWFCU3-18(WW)               |                 |                | Preparec | by: Y. Miyamoto         |
|---|-----------------|----------------|----------|-------------------------|
| From: 2nd Tech Service Sect., MFP/Printer Tech Service Dept |                 |                |          |                         |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting | Part informat  | tion     | Action required         |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrical     |          | Service manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec   | eive     | Retrofit information    |
|   | Product Safety  | 🛛 Other (Firmv | vare)    | 🖂 Tier 2                |

This RTB has been issued to announce the firmware release information for the **GWFCU3-18(WW)**.

| Version  | Program No. | Effective Date           | Availability of RFU |
|----------|-------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 05.00.00 | D4985570E   | April 2016 production    | Available           |
| 04.00.00 | D4985570D   | December 2012 production | Available           |
| 03.00.00 | D4985570C   | May 2012 production      | Available           |
| 02.00.00 | D4985570B   | March 2011 production    | Available           |
| 01.00.00 | D4985570A   | 1st Mass production      | Available           |

Note: Definition of Availability of RFU via @Remote

"Available" The firmware can be updated via RFU or SD card.

| Version  | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected  |
|----------|---|
| 05.00.00 | Symptom corrected:<br>If "Forwarding setting of Reception File Setting" is enabled and a fax<br>received is transferred to a folder, an error (code: 14-30) occurs and the fax<br>is falsely deleted.   |
| 04.00.00 | <ol> <li>Symptom corrected:</li> <li>The number of FAX pages printed out does not match the number that appears in the Job Log.</li> <li>The number of pages printed out does not match the number that appears in the Job Log, if the machine main power is turned OFF/ON while the machine is receiving a FAX.</li> </ol> |
| 03.00.00 | <ol> <li>Symptoms corrected:</li> <li>The machine stalls while forwarding the image to the FAX folder.</li> <li>An image problem occurs when receiving a JBIG (B) FAX from a Xerox machine.</li> </ol>  |
| 02.00.00 | Minor bug correction.   |
| 01.00.00 | 1st Mass production   |



Reissued: 01- Sep-10

Model: V-C3

Date: 11-Dec-09

No.: RD081012a

| Subject: Firmware Release Note: PS3/PDF             |                 |                | Prepared by: T. Toriumi |                         |
|---|-----------------|----------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                 |                |                         |                         |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting | Part informat  | tion                    | Action required         |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrical     |                         | Service manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec   | eive                    | Retrofit information    |
|   | Product Safety  | 🛛 Other (Firmv | vare)                   | 🖂 Tier 2                |

This RTB has been issued to announce the firmware release information for the PS3/PDF.

| Version | Program No. | Effective Date          | Availability of RFU |
|---------|-------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 1.01    | D4975903A   | October 2011 production | Available           |
| 1.00    | D4975903    | 1st Mass production     | Available           |

Note: Definition of Availability of RFU via @Remote "Available": The firmware can be updated via RFU or SD card. "Not available": The firmware can only be updated via SD card.

| Version | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected   |
|---------|--|
| 1.01    | Symptom corrected:<br>1. PDF Direct jobs containing a mask that was created using tiling will be<br>reset. (GFPR#OS11070002) |
| 1.00    | 1st Mass production  |



#### Reissued: 02-Apr-12

| Model: V-C3 | Date: 11-Dec-09 | No.: RD081013e |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|

#### **RTB** Reissue

#### The items in bold italics have been corrected or added.

| Subject: Firmware Release Note: OpePanel.EXP                |                 |               | Prepared | d by: C. Shimaji        |
|---|-----------------|---------------|----------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/Printer Tech Service Dept |                 |               |          |                         |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting | Part informat | ion      | Action required         |
|   | 🗌 Mechanical    | Electrical    |          | Service manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec  | eive     | Retrofit information    |
|   | Product Safety  | Other (Firmv  | vare)    | 🛛 Tier 2                |

This RTB has been issued to announce the firmware release information for the **OpePanel.EXP.** 

#### USA

| Version | Program No. | Effective Date          | Availability of RFU |
|---------|-------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 1.05    | D0815453D   | May 2012 production     | Available           |
| 1.04    | D0815453C   | March 2011 production   | Available           |
| 1.02    | D0815453B   | January 2010 production | Available           |
| 1.01    | D0815453A   | 1st Mass production     | Available           |

#### EUR

| Version | Program No. | Effective Date          | Availability of RFU |
|---------|-------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 1.05    | D0815454D   | May 2012 production     | Available           |
| 1.04    | D0815454C   | March 2011 production   | Available           |
| 1.02    | D0815454B   | January 2010 production | Available           |
| 1.01    | D0815454A   | 1st Mass production     | Available           |

#### TWN

| Version | Program No. | Effective Date          | Availability of RFU |
|---------|-------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 1.05    | D0815455D   | May 2012 production     | Available           |
| 1.04    | D0815455C   | March 2011 production   | Available           |
| 1.03    | D0815455B   | May 2010 production     | Available           |
| 1.02    | D0815455A   | January 2010 production | Available           |
| 1.01    | D0815455    | 1st Mass production     | Available           |

#### CHN

| Version | Program No. | Effective Date        | Availability of RFU |
|---------|-------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1.05    | D0815456B   | May 2012 production   | Available           |
| 1.04    | D0815456A   | March 2011 production | Available           |
| 1.03    | D0815456    | 1st Mass production   | Available           |

Note: Definition of Availability of RFU via @Remote

"Available": The firmware can be updated via RFU or SD card.



#### Reissued: 02-Apr-12

| - IVI | ode | 1: | V-C3 |
|-------|-----|----|------|

## USA

| Version | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected   |
|---------|--|
| 1.05    | Other changes:<br>A software button was added to the Copier screen, which can be assigned<br>to specific SDK applications.<br>Note: In order to utilize this change, the SDK application itself must also<br>support this functionality. For details, see the Release Notes for each<br>application. |
| 1.04    | Minor bug correction.  |
| 1.02    | Standardization with other models. This change has no effect on this model.  |
| 1.01    | 1st Mass production  |

#### EUR

| Version | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected   |
|---------|--|
| 1.05    | Other changes:<br>A software button was added to the Copier screen, which can be assigned<br>to specific SDK applications.<br>Note: In order to utilize this change, the SDK application itself must also<br>support this functionality. For details, see the Release Notes for each<br>application. |
| 1.04    | Minor bug correction.  |
| 1.02    | Standardization with other models. This change has no effect on this model.  |
| 1.01    | 1st Mass production  |

#### TWN

| Version | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected   |
|---------|--|
| 1.05    | Other changes:<br>A software button was added to the Copier screen, which can be assigned<br>to specific SDK applications.<br>Note: In order to utilize this change, the SDK application itself must also<br>support this functionality. For details, see the Release Notes for each<br>application. |
| 1.04    | Minor bug correction.  |
| 1.03    | Language for D081/D082-19 model has been modified.   |
| 1.02    | Standardization with other models. This change has no effect on this model.  |
| 1.01    | 1st Mass production  |

Date: 11-Dec-09

No.: RD081013e



Date: 11-Dec-09

No.: RD081013e

Reissued: 02-Apr-12

Model: v-c3

CHN

| Version | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected   |
|---------|--|
| 1.05    | Other changes:<br>A software button was added to the Copier screen, which can be assigned<br>to specific SDK applications.<br>Note: In order to utilize this change, the SDK application itself must also<br>support this functionality. For details, see the Release Notes for each<br>application. |
| 1.04    | Minor bug correction.  |
| 1.03    | 1st Mass production  |

## Technical Bulletin

#### Reissued: 01-Feb-12

| Model: V-C3 | Date: 11-Dec-09 | No.: RD081014b |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|

#### **RTB** Reissue

The items in bold italics have been corrected.

| Subject: Firmware Release Note: Web Uapl                    |                 |               | Prepare | d by: C.Shimaji         |
|---|-----------------|---------------|---------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/Printer Tech Service Dept |                 |               | ·       |                         |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting | Part informat | ion     | Action required         |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrical    |         | Service manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec  | eive    | Retrofit information    |
|   | Product Safety  | Other (Firmw  | vare)   | 🛛 Tier 2                |

This RTB has been issued to announce the firmware release information for the Web Uapl.

| Version | Program No. | Effective Date           | Availability of RFU |
|---------|-------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1.02    | D0815776C   | February 2012 production | Available           |
| 1.01    | D0815776B   | March 2011 production    | Available           |
| 1.00    | D0815776A   | 1st Mass production      | Available           |

Note: Definition of Availability of RFU via @Remote

"Available": The firmware can be updated via RFU or SD card.

| Version | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected   |  |  |  |
|---------|--|--|--|--|
| 1.02    | <ul> <li>Other changes:</li> <li>1. Scan to file would not allow the creation of PDF files if the "Master Password" setting was configured but the "Document Password" setting was not. After the fix, Scan to file will now allow the creation of PDF files under these conditions.</li> </ul>  |  |  |  |
|         | This firmware is dependent on the following firmware modules. Please be<br>sure to update all of them:<br>Network DocBox Ver 1.02 (D0815772B)<br>Scanner Ver 01.06 (D0815787E)<br>Web Uapl Ver 1.02 (D0815776C)  |  |  |  |
| 1.01    | <ul> <li>Symptom corrected:</li> <li>Even if "Restrict Use of Destinations (Scanner)" is enabled, users can still see destinations (folders/E-mail addresses) via "Web Image Monitor &gt; Document Server" and type them in manually and use them. This only occurred if "Restrict Use of Destinations (Fax)" was disabled.</li> </ul> |  |  |  |
| 1.00    | 1st Mass production  |  |  |  |

## **T**echnical **B**ulletin

#### Reissued: 13-Nov-15

| Model: V-C3 | Date: 22-Dec-09 | No.: RD081015h |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|

#### **RTB Reissue**

#### The items in **bold italics** have been corrected.

| Subject: Firmware Release Note: PCL                         |                 |                  | Prepared by: T. Mimura  |
|---|-----------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/Printer Tech Service Dept |                 |                  |                         |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting | Part information | Action required         |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrical       | Service manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/receiv  | e Retrofit information  |
|   | Product Safety  | 🛛 Other (Firmwar | e) 🛛 Tier 2             |

#### This RTB has been issued to announce the firmware release information for the PCL.

| Version | Program No. | Effective Date           | Availability of RFU |
|---------|-------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1.13    | D0815783J   | December 2015 production | Available           |
| 1.12    | D0815783H   | October 2014 production  | Available           |
| 1.11    | D0815783G   | March 2012 production    | Available           |
| 1.10    | D0815783F   | February 2012 production | Available           |
| 1.09    | D0815783E   | June 2011 production     | Available           |
| 1.08    | D0815783D   | March 2011 production    | Available           |
| 1.07    | D0815783C   | November 2010 production | Available           |
| 1.06    | D0815783B   | April 2010 production    | Available           |
| 1.05    | D0815783A   | 1st Mass production      | Available           |

Note: Definition of Availability of RFU via @Remote "Available": The firmware can be updated via RFU or SD card. "Not available": The firmware can only be updated via SD card.

| Version | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected   |
|---------|--|
| 1.13    | Symptom corrected:<br>PCL6 jobs containing raster images and submitted using an Office 2010<br>application, might cause the device to throw an SC899.<br>(GFPR#RE12010015, GFPR#RE15020032)  |
| 1.12    | <ol> <li>Symptom corrected:</li> <li>SC899 caused by the printing of specific kinds of TrueType fonts in PCL jobs. (GFPR#RE11070014, GFPR#RC12050012, GFPR#RE12080003, GFPR#RE13020020)</li> <li>A PCL XL error might occur when using the Citrix UPD to print.</li> <li>If the glyph data of TrueType fonts includes hinting information that is on the edge of the frame, an SC899 error might occur. (GFPR#RC14030010)</li> </ol> |
| 1.11    | Symptom corrected<br>The use of a PCL5 macro results in an extra blank page being added to the job.<br>(GFPR#RE11110012)   |
| 1.10    | <ul> <li>Symptom corrected</li> <li>Multiple-glyph fonts are not printed at all if any of the glyphs are missing. An example of a multiple-glyph font is a letter with 2 dots over it such as 'A'. The 2 dots and the letter might be separate glyphs. If for example the 2 dots are</li> </ul>  |

#### Reissued: 13-Nov-15

| Model: V- | C3   | Date: 22-Dec-09  | No.: RD081015h   |  |
|-----------|--|--|--|--|
| Version   | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected   |  |  |  |
|           | <ul> <li>missing, the 'A' should still be printed. (GFPR#RE11040007)</li> <li>2. SC899 caused by the printing of specific kinds of scalable TrueType fonts.<br/>(GFPR#RE11100007)</li> <li>3. SC899 caused by the printing of specific kinds of scalable TrueType fonts.<br/>(GEPR#CN11110001)</li> </ul>  |  |  |  |
| 1.09      | <ol> <li>Other changes:</li> <li>If a PCL6 job is printed to a shift tray im page of the PCL6 job will be shifted ins Note: This problem was reported most of printed with the Windows PCL5 Separa</li> <li>-The color of objects in a PCL5 macro mesulting in them being the same color invisible.</li> <li>The wrong font might be used in PCL5 could result in text appearing differently</li> <li>Characters or symbols missing from the GL/2.</li> <li>Objects out of position in PCL5 jobs constructed the following commands:</li> <li><esc>&amp;I#U</esc></li> </ol> | nmediately following a F<br>tead of each job or cop<br>often in cases where a<br>tor page (PCL.sep).<br>might not have been as<br>as the background. This<br>jobs containing PCL5 r<br>than expected.<br>e printouts of jobs contain<br>ntaining HP-GL/2 and n<br>containing macros that u | PCL5 job, each<br>y being shifted.<br>PCL6 job is<br>signed a color,<br>s made them<br>macros. This<br>aining HP-<br>nacro.<br>Use either of |  |
| 1.08      | Symptom corrected:<br>1. A paper size mismatch occurs if all of th<br>- The PCL job specifies the Interpos<br>- The paper is placed in the in the In<br>- The PCL job uses any of the follow<br>Staple, Punch, Ring Binding, Perfect Bindin<br>Trimmer   | he following conditions<br>er as the source tray.<br>terposer LEF.<br>/ing options:<br>ng, Z-Folding, Multi-she  | are met:<br>et Fold,   |  |
| 1.07      | Symptom corrected:<br>1. When a page object is superimposed ov<br>portions of the objects might be printed in the<br>objects.<br>2. PCL5 raster images are omitted from the<br>image is located outside of the printable are<br>driver.  | er top of another, the or<br>black even if they were<br>e printout if any part of t<br>ea. This did not occur if   | verlapping<br>not black<br>he raster<br>using the  |  |
| 1.06      | Symptom corrected:<br>Minor bug correction   |  |  |  |
| 1.05      | 1st Mass production  |  |  |  |



#### Reissued: 06-Jun-11

| Date: 07-Jan-10 | No.: RD081016c |
|-----------------|----------------|

#### Model: v-c3 RTB Reissue

The items in bold italics have been added.

| Subject: Firmware Release Note: App2Me              |                 |               | Prepared by: K. Hamada |                         |
|---|-----------------|---------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                 |               |                        |                         |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting | Part informat | tion                   | Action required         |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrical    |                        | Service manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec  | eive                   | Retrofit information    |
|   | Product Safety  | Other (Firmv  | vare)                  | 🖂 Tier 2                |

This RTB has been issued to announce the firmware release information for the App2Me.

| Version | Program No.  | Effective Date                   |
|---------|--------------|----------------------------------|
| 1.5.700 | D0925766C    | June 2011 production             |
| 1.5.2   | D0925766B    | May 2010 production              |
| 1.5.1   | D0925766_001 | Not apply to the mass production |
| 1.02    | D0925766A    | 1st Mass production              |

| Version | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected                                       |
|---------|--|
| 1.5.700 | Minor bug correction.  |
| 1.5.2   | Only the program number was changed.<br>(Contents are the same as V1.5.1). |
| 1.5.1   | Supports App2Me Scan V2.   |
|         | Note:  |
|         | Single page TIFE JPEG Multi-page TIFE Single page PDE Multi-page PDE       |
|         | High compression PDF   |
| 1.02    | 1st Mass production  |



#### Reissued: 23-Aug-10

| Date: 27-Jan-10 | No.: RD081017a |
|-----------------|----------------|

#### Model: v-c3 RTB Reissue

The items in bold italics have been corrected or added.

| Subject: Firmware Release Note: RPCS                |                 |               | Prepared by: T. Toriumi |                         |
|---|-----------------|---------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                 |               |                         |                         |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting | Part informat | tion                    | Action required         |
|   | 🗌 Mechanical    | Electrical    |                         | Service manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec  | eive                    | Retrofit information    |
|   | Product Safety  | Other (Firmv  | vare)                   | 🛛 Tier 2                |

This RTB has been issued to announce the firmware release information for the **RPCS**.

| Version    | Program No. | Effective Date            |  |
|------------|-------------|---------------------------|--|
| 3.10.6     | D0815781B   | September 2010 production |  |
| 3.10.5.2.3 | D0815781A   | 1st Mass production       |  |

| Modified Points or Symptom Corrected                                 |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| Symptom corrected:   |  |  |
| 1. Duplex pages in mixed orientation jobs are intermittently printed |  |  |
| upside down.   |  |  |
| 1st Mass production  |  |  |
|  |  |  |

## Technical Bulletin

Reissued: 26-Mar-13

Date: 26-Jan-10

No.: RD081018a

#### **RTB Reissue**

Model: V-C3

| The items in bold italics have been corrected.              |                 |                  |                         |                         |  |
|---|-----------------|------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| Subject: Firmware Release Note: SubCPU                      |                 |                  | Prepared by: C. Shimaji |                         |  |
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/Printer Tech Service Dept |                 |                  |                         |                         |  |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting | Part information | tion                    | Action required         |  |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrical       |                         | Service manual revision |  |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec     | eive                    | Retrofit information    |  |
|   | Product Safety  | 🛛 Other (Firmv   | vare)                   | 🛛 Tier 2                |  |

This RTB has been issued to announce the firmware release information for the SubCPU.

| Version | Program No. | Effective Date        |
|---------|-------------|-----------------------|
| F.06    | D0815770B   | March 2013 production |
| F.05    | D0815770A   | 1st Mass production   |

| Version | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected   |
|---------|--|
| F.06    | <ul> <li>Symptom corrected:</li> <li>SC816-38/49/90 occurs.</li> <li>The machine does not detect the status of the ADF (e.g., opening/closing of the ADF, loading of an original) after recovering from Sleep Mode.</li> </ul> |
| F.05    | 1st Mass production  |



**PAGE: 1/1** 

Model: V-C3

Date: 15-Feb-10

No.: RD081019

| Subject:: DIP SW settings on VBCU |                               | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |      |                         |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Overse                  | eas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQ | M Dept                       |      |                         |
| Classification:                   | Troubleshooting               | Part informat                | tion | Action required         |
|                                   | Mechanical                    | Electrical                   |      | Service manual revision |
|                                   | Paper path                    | Transmit/rec                 | eive | Retrofit information    |
|                                   | Other ()                      |                              |      |                         |

#### D081/D082 Service Manual Revision

Replace the illustration shown below (regarding the DIP SW settings on the VBCU) in the D081/D082 FSM (Pg. 458).

#### New illustration for DIP SW settings











(OFF) (ON)



**PAGE: 1/1** 

Model:V-C3

Date: 15-Feb-10

No.: RD081020

| Subject:: Service Manual Revision(SP 2265-003)     |                 | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |      |                                     |
|--|-----------------|------------------------------|------|-------------------------------------|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQM Dept |                 |                              |      |                                     |
| Classification:                                    | Troubleshooting | Part information             | tion | Action required                     |
|  | 🗌 Mechanical    | Electrical                   |      | $\boxtimes$ Service manual revision |
|  | Paper path      | Transmit/rec                 | eive | Retrofit information                |
|  | Other ()        |                              |      |                                     |

#### D081/D082 Service Manual Revision

Delete SP2265-3 (Voffset\_reg), as this SP is not used. Therefore the SP value of SP2265-3 is always "**0**".

#### 4. Appendix: Service Program Mode Tables

Pg. 212

| 226<br>5 | ID Sn Chk Disp  |  |
|----------|---|--|
|          | Displays the most recent ID sensor Vsg and <del>Vc</del>  | <del>lfset</del> readings.   |
|          | Notes:  |  |
|          | <ul> <li>Vsg_reg is the reading of the direct sense<br/>reflectivity of the bare surface of ITB. If Vsg<br/>damaged, or disconnected</li> </ul> | ors in the black and color ID sensors that detect the g_reg is less than 3.8V, the ID sensor may be dirty, |
|          | <ul> <li>If Voffset_reg is less than 0.15, the ID set<br/>replaced as a unit.)</li> </ul>   | nsor should be replaced. (The ID sensors are   |
| 1        | Vsg_reg   |  |
| -3-      | Voffset_reg-  |  |

## Technical Bulletin

Reissued:17-Mar-10

Date:15-Feb-10

No.: RD081021a

#### **RTB Reissue**

Model: V-C3

| The items in                              | bold italics were correct   | ted or added.  |                    |  |
|---|---|--|--------------------|--|
| Subject:: SPACER:HOUSING:THERMOSTAT:FRONT |   | Prepared by  | /: Takeshi Toriumi |  |
| From: 1st Overse                          | as Tech Support Sec, 1 st PC  | }M Dept  |                    |  |
| Classification:                           | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Other ()</li> </ul> | <ul> <li>Part information</li> <li>Electrical</li> <li>Transmit/rec</li> </ul> | tion               | Action required<br>Service manual revision<br>Retrofit information |

#### Note:

The attachment position for **SPACER:HOUSING:THERMOSTAT:FRONT (Pg.182, Index#165)** is decided, so **be sure to** attach this part **in the correct position** any time in the field.



Reissued:17-Mar-10

**RICOH** 

Model: V-C3

Date:15-Feb-10

No.: RD081021a

#### Reason:

This part adjusts the height between Fusing Belt and Thermostat.

If this part is attached in an incorrect position, the thermostat might *NOT* function correctly.

#### **Correct Attachment Position**

A screw is installed in the center position.



#### **Incorrect Attachment Position**

A screw is installed in either the left or right position.





## Technical Bulletin

**PAGE: 1/1** 

Model: V-C3

Date: 12-Mar-10

No.: RD081022

| Subject:: SP5802(Free Run Mode) |  | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |      |                              |
|---------------------------------|--|------------------------------|------|------------------------------|
| From: 1st Overse                | eas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQ                    | M Dept                       |      |                              |
| Classification:                 | Classification: Troubleshooting Part information |                              | tion | Action required              |
|                                 | Mechanical                                       | Electrical                   |      | imes Service manual revision |
|                                 | Paper path                                       | Transmit/rec                 | eive | Retrofit information         |
|                                 | Other ()   |                              |      |                              |

#### D081/D082 Service Manual Revision

Delete SP5802 (Free Run Mode), as this SP is not used.

#### 6. Troubleshooting

Pg. 533

#### Important SP Codes

Here is a list of important SP codes that you may need during troubleshooting. For more information about these and other SP codes, refer to the Service Tables.

| <del>SP5802</del> | Free Ron Mode         | Execute this SP to force base engine to run in the free run-<br>mode for testing.                                |
|-------------------|-----------------------|--|
| SP5803            | Input Check           | Displays the signals received from sensors and switches.   |
| SP5804            | Output Check          | Switches electrical components one by one for testing.   |
| SP5810            | Cancel Fusing SC Code | Use this to cancel a fusing unit SC code to return the machine to normal operation after you repair the machine. |



Model: V-C3

Date: 19-Mar-10

No.: RD081023

| Subject:: Service Manual Revision (Fax Option)     |   |   | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |  |
|--|---|---|------------------------------|--|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQM Dept |   |   |                              |  |
| Classification:                                    | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Other ()</li> </ul> | <ul> <li>Part informat</li> <li>Electrical</li> <li>Transmit/rec</li> </ul> | tion<br>eive                 | <ul> <li>Action required</li> <li>Service manual revision</li> <li>Retrofit information</li> </ul> |

#### D081/D082 Service Manual Revision

The area shown in red below was revised (the D081/D082 copier supports **Fax Option Type C7501 (D498)**).

#### 2. Installation MFP Controller Options Pg. 245

No. Name Description 3 Slot C Gigabit Ethernet (D377-21). The EFI (Fiery) controller is connected through Gigabit Ethernet. Data Overwrite Security (D497) 4 Upper Slot PostScript3 (D497) Browser Unit (D497) HDD Encryption Unit (D377-16) Lower Slot (5) Contains the VM card when the machine leaves the factory. When used for firmware updates, and moving applications to another SD card with SP5873 (Apli Move), the VM card must be removed and then reinstalled after the update procedure is completed. 6 USB 2.0 Built-in for connection of USB devices.  $\overline{(7)}$ 100BaseT LAN Standard LAN connection point. USB Ch1 For future use (PictaBridge, other application devices). 8 Note: These connection points are covered with a plate. Remove the ۹ USB Ch2 screw, rotate the plate and reattach it with the screw so that the slots are exposed, then attach the connector. 10 TEL Jack for telephone connection 11 Line 1 Jack for main telephone line from the outside for connection to Fax-Option (D356). Fax Option Type C7501 (D498)

## Technical Bulletin

Reissued:16-Sept-10

Model: V-C3

Date: 26-Mar-10

No.: RD081024a

#### **RTB Reissue**

The items in *bold italics* were corrected or added.

| Subject: Outline of Developer Installation        |                 |               | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |                         |
|---|-----------------|---------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1st PQM Dept |                 |               |                              |                         |
| Classification:                                   | Troubleshooting | Part informat | tion                         | Action required         |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrical    |                              | Service manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec  | eive                         | Retrofit information    |
|   | Product Safety  | 🗌 Other (     | )                            | Tier 2                  |

Following flow chart shows the Outline of Developer Installation.

Developer installation will be completed after performing both these 2 parts as a set. Part1: "DEVELOPER FILLING" + "Part2: "TD SENSOR INITIALIZATION" If one of them is missing, developer installation has not been completed yet and it will lead to abnormal image density or toner scattering inside the machine.





#### Reissued:16-Sept-10

| Model: V-C3 | Date: 26-Mar-10 | No.: RD081024a |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|

#### NOTE: 1

There are two types of SP modes, which perform the TD Sensor Initialization.

#### SP3811 (Dev Setup Execute):

Use SP3811 only when you install a brand new machine, or after replacing the PCU with a brand new one. SP3811 does a number of things, including initialization of the TD sensor. SP 3811 also sends toner to the sub hopper of the PCU, covers the drum with a layer of toner (to prevent the cleaning blades from flipping, or damaging the drums), and does process control.

#### SP3801 (Init TD Sensor):

Use SP3801 when you replace only the developer. SP 3801 initializes the TD sensor for the new developer.

#### **IMPORTANT**

Never do SP3801 (Init TD Sensor) after doing SP3811. If the TD sensor is initialized twice, this will cause a fatal error in toner supply control.

After using SP 3801 or 3811, do not use them again until the next time you replace the developer. Otherwise, you will cause toner scattering inside the machine. To cure this, you must replace the developer.

#### NOTE: 2

SP number for Success Confirmation differs according to the SP, which performed the TD Sensor Initialization.

#### SP3812 (Dev Setup Execute):

This SP is to check if SP3811 was performed successfully or not. The machine displays "1" to confirm that SP3811 was executed correctly. The "1111" display indicates the returned value for each PCU: K, M, C, and Y.

#### **IMPORTANT:**

SP3812 does NOT show the results of SP3801.

#### SP3802 (TD Sn Init OK?):

This SP is to check if SP3801 was performed successfully or not. The machine displays "1" to confirm that SP3801 was executed correctly. The "1111" display indicates the returned value for each PCU: K, M, C, and Y.

#### **IMPORTANT:**

SP3802 does **NOT** show the results of SP3811.

Reissued:16-Sept-10

| Model: V-C3 | Date: 26-Mar-10 | No.: RD081024a |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|

NOTE: 3

Use <u>SP3817</u> to check whether BOTH developer filling and TD sensor initialization were completed successfully.

SP3817-001 to 004 (Developer Filling: Admission):Value:Meaning:"0"Both SP3814 and SP3811 (or SP3801) were completed successfully"1"SP3814, SP3811, or SP3801 was not completed successfully

# For any toner color that shows a value of "1", the machine stops supplying toner from the toner cartridge to the sub-hopper. As a result, "Toner is empty" or "Toner is almost empty" is displayed, even if there is still a lot of toner left inside the cartridge.

The aim of this RTB is to show the outline of Developer Installation. This outline will help you to recognize "Where you are now." and "What you are doing now" during the many steps concerning Developer Installation. However, please refer to the field service manual carefully for the details about the whole procedure.

## Technical Bulletin

#### **PAGE: 1/1**

| Model: V-C3                                       |                 |              |  | te: 26-Mar-10 |            | No.: RD081025     |
|---|-----------------|--------------|--|---------------|------------|-------------------|
| Subject: Abnormal Image Density and SC4XX         |                 |              |  |               | d by: H. N | Matsui            |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1st PQM Dept |                 |              |  |               |            |                   |
| Classification:                                   | Troubleshooting | Part informa |  | tion Action r |            | n required        |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrical   |  | Servic        |            | e manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec |  | eceive        |            | fit information   |
|   | Product Safety  | Other (      |  | )             | Tier 2     |                   |

#### SYMPTOM:

- Image density is too light.
- Toner is scattering inside the machine.
- SC4XX is/are registered in SC history (SP7403)

#### CAUSE:

ID sensor [A] is dirty with toner.



#### **ACTION:**

Clean the ID sensor with ALCOHOL. (Do NOT clean with a dry cloth!)

#### IMPORTANT

Never use a dry cloth to clean the ID sensor. Wiping the ID sensor with a dry cloth builds up static electricity on the surface of ID sensor. Static electricity attracts toner to the surface of the ID sensor. This makes the ID sensor dirty and it leads to the same symptom again.



Model: V-C3

Date: 31-Mar-10

No.: RD081026

| Subject:: SP2-222-001(Execute Wire Cleaning)       |                 |               | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |                         |  |
|--|-----------------|---------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQM Dept |                 |               |                              |                         |  |
| Classification:                                    | Troubleshooting | Part informat | tion                         | Action required         |  |
|  | 🗌 Mechanical    | Electrical    |                              | Service manual revision |  |
|  | Paper path      | Transmit/rec  | eive                         | Retrofit information    |  |
|  | Other ( )       |               |                              |                         |  |

#### Important information about SP2-222-001

**Every time** you replace the following service parts, make sure to **execute SP2-222-001** (corona wire cleaning) after you attach the new parts. This is because SP2-222-001 checks whether these parts are working correctly.

CLEANER:GRID:ASS'Y (pg. 124, index #66) CLEANER:CORONA WIRE:ASS'Y (pg. 124, index #67)

#### P/C Section#U011\_S001 CHARGE CORONA: ASS'Y





Model: V-C3

Date: 06-Apr-10

No.: RD081027

| Subject:: P to P(Fuse Information)                 |                 |               | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |                         |  |
|--|-----------------|---------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQM Dept |                 |               |                              |                         |  |
| Classification:                                    | Troubleshooting | Part informat | tion                         | Action required         |  |
|  | 🗌 Mechanical    | Electrical    |                              | Service manual revision |  |
|  | Paper path      | Transmit/rec  | eive                         | Retrofit information    |  |
|  | Other (P to P)  |               |                              |                         |  |

#### P to P Revision

The fuse-related information shown below in **bold** was newly added to the P-to-P.

| Fuse Lis | St DU8T(INA) |               |                        |   |
|----------|--------------|---------------|------------------------|---|
| FU101    | 15A-250V     | Removable     | CN400,401,402,403,406, | CN400,407:Not   |
|          |              |               | 407                    | Used  |
| FU102    | 15A-250V     | Removable     | CN404,405              | Fusing Lamp   |
| FU103    | 2A-250V      | Non-removable | CN402,403              | Upper/Lower Tray<br>Heater,<br>Anti-Condensation<br>Heater-Transfer |
| FU104    | 2A-250V      | Non-removable | CN407-1,2,3            | -   |

| Fuse Lis | Fuse List D082(NA), D081/D082(EU) |               |                        |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|----------|-----------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| FU101    | 10A-250V                          | Removable     | CN400,401,402,403,406, | -   |  |  |  |  |  |
|          |                                   |               | 407                    |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| FU102    | 10A-250V                          | Removable     | CN404,405              | Fusing Lamp   |  |  |  |  |  |
| FU103    | 2A-250V                           | Non-removable | CN402,403              | Upper/Lower Tray<br>Heater,<br>Anti-Condensation<br>Heater-Transfer |  |  |  |  |  |
| FU104    | 2A-250V                           | Non-removable | CN407-1,2,3            | -   |  |  |  |  |  |
| FU501    | 2A-250V                           | Non-removable | CN404                  | -   |  |  |  |  |  |

| Fuse List | D081(NA)  |               |              |                       |
|-----------|-----------|---------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| FUS001    | 15A-250V  | Removable     | -            | 24V,12V,5.1V          |
| FUS002    | 2.5A-250V | Non-removable | -            | 5.1VE                 |
| FU111     | 6.3A-250V | Non-removable | CN416-2      | ADF:Vcc(5.1V)         |
| FU112     | 6.3A-250V | Non-removable | CN414-2      | DRB:Vcc(5.1V)         |
| FU113     | 6.3A-250V | Non-removable | CN413-6      | SIOB:Vcc(5.1V)        |
| FU114     | 6.3A-250V | Non-removable | CN409-1,2,   | IOB,IPU,PFB:Vcc(5.1V) |
|           |           |               | CN411-1,2,3, |                       |
|           |           |               | CN412-4      |                       |
| FUS012    | 6.3A-250V | Non-removable | CN410-1,2    | IPU:VccE(5.1VE)       |
| FUS034    | 6.3A-250V | Non-removable | CN410-3,4    | IPU:VccE(5.1VE)       |

|  | RI | CO | Н |
|--|----|----|---|
|--|----|----|---|

| Model: V-C3                       |           |               |         | Date: 06-Apr-10 No.: RD081027 |         |                |  |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|---------------|---------|-------------------------------|---------|----------------|--|
| Fuse List D082(NA), D081/D082(EU) |           |               |         |                               |         |                |  |
| FUS001                            | 8A-250V   | Removable     | -       |                               | 24V,12V | /,5.1V         |  |
| FUS002                            | 2.5A-250V | Non-removable | -       |                               | 5.1VE   |                |  |
| FU111                             | 6.3A-250V | Non-removable | CN416-2 | 2                             | ADF:Vc  | c(5.1V)        |  |
| FU112                             | 6.3A-250V | Non-removable | CN414-2 | 2                             | DRB:Vc  | c(5.1V)        |  |
| FU113                             | 6.3A-250V | Non-removable | CN413-6 | 5                             | SIOB:V  | cc(5.1V)       |  |
| FU114                             | 6.3A-250V | Non-removable | CN409-1 | l,2,                          | IOB,IPU | ,PFB:Vcc(5.1V) |  |
|                                   |           |               | CN411-1 | l,2,3,                        |         |                |  |
|                                   |           |               | CN412-4 | 1                             |         |                |  |
| FUS012                            | 6.3A-250V | Non-removable | CN410-1 | 1,2                           | IPU:Vcc | E(5.1VE)       |  |
| FUS034                            | 6.3A-250V | Non-removable | CN410-3 | 3,4                           | IPU:Vcc | E(5.1VE)       |  |

## Technical Bulletin

Reissued: 21-Apr-21

Model: V-C3

Date: 09-Apr-10

No.: RD081028a

#### **RTB Reissue**

| The items in <b>bold red italics</b> were corrected or added. |                               |                 |          |                         |  |  |
|---|-------------------------------|-----------------|----------|-------------------------|--|--|
| Subject:  |                               |                 | Preparec | by: C.Tsuji             |  |  |
| Important note  | s for installing the Color Co | ntroller E-7200 |          |                         |  |  |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept.           |                               |                 |          |                         |  |  |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting               | Part informat   | tion     | Action required         |  |  |
|   | 🗌 Mechanical                  | Electrical      |          | Service manual revision |  |  |
|   | Paper path                    | Transmit/rec    | eive     | Retrofit information    |  |  |
|   | Product Safety                | Other (         | )        | Tier 2                  |  |  |

This Technical Bulletin contains important notes concerning the installation of the Color Controller E-7200 with Model V-C3.

#### Approved Firmware for the Model V-C3 for connection with the E-7200 Controller

Make sure that the firmware modules for Model V-C3 are upgraded as follows at the E-7200 installation.

Engine: 1.05:06 or newer

System/Copy: 1.01 or newer

Network Support (NIB): 9.53 or newer

Scanner: 01.03 or newer

Web Support: 1.01 or newer

#### SP mode setting for the E-7200 Controller

As written in the service manual, the following SP values of Model V-C3 must be changed at the E-7200 installation.

#### SP#: 5193-001

Value: 1 (Default: 0) \*The valid external controller will be specified as "Fiery controller".

#### SP#: 5895-001

Value: **1** (Default: 0) \*This setting disables the pre-installed GW printer feature. GW printer must be disabled when using E-7200. Reissued: 21-Apr-21

Model: V-C3

Date: 09-Apr-10 No.: RD081028a

#### Information: System Software DVD is included in the box.

System Software DVD is included in the product carton box.

This DVD should be used when the controller has any problem (system software problem, HDD replacement, etc.).

On the DVD label, it is printed "For Service Only".

The USB Prep Tool (a utility that enables you to install the system software from a USB drive) will be provided via the firmware download site.

## Technical Bulletin

#### **PAGE: 1/1**

| Model: V-C3                                       |                 |              |      | e: 16-Apr- | 10         | No.: RD081029      |
|---|-----------------|--------------|------|------------|------------|--------------------|
| Subject: Banding in red solid image               |                 |              |      |            | d by: H. N | Matsui             |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1st PQM Dept |                 |              |      |            |            |                    |
| Classification:                                   | Troubleshooting | Part inf     | orma | tion       | Action     | n required         |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrical   |      |            | Servic     | ce manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec |      | eive       | Retro      | fit information    |
|   | Product Safety  | Other (      |      | )          | Tier 2     |                    |

#### SYMPTOM



Banding [A] appears in solid images that are printed using magenta toner (the red leaf above, for example) on top of a white background.

#### CAUSE

This occurs due to a combination of the following two factors:

- Magenta toner has a slightly lower image transfer bias than other colors.
   Note: This was done as a solution to grainy images in cyan halftone areas, which occurred due to the amount of magenta transferred on top of cyan on the ITB.
- Machine vibrations
   Note: Image areas that use magenta are more easily affected by machine vibrations.

#### ACTION

Increase the target image transfer current for magenta by setting **SP2406-002** (Norm FC Bias ITB: M) to a value **between 27 and 30.** 

#### Side effects:

- Grainy images in cyan halftone areas may occur more easily
- Increased consumption of magenta toner

## Technical Bulletin

**PAGE: 1/1** 

| Model: V-C3 Da                                    |                 |              |  | e: 20-Apr-   | 10         | No.: RD081030      |
|---|-----------------|--------------|--|--------------|------------|--------------------|
| Subject: Service Manual Revision                  |                 |              |  |              | d by: H. N | Matsui             |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1st PQM Dept |                 |              |  |              |            |                    |
| Classification:                                   | Troubleshooting | Part informa |  | ation Action |            | n required         |
|   | 🗌 Mechanical    | Electrical   |  | 🖂 Servi      |            | ce manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec |  | eive 🗌 Retro |            | fit information    |
|   | Product Safety  | Other (      |  | )            | Tier 2     |                    |

#### **Service Manual Correction**

Please **delete** the description below.

Reason: Replacing the HDD has no effect on the function of the encryption keys.

PDF manual: pg. 495

HTML manual:

Main Chapters / Replacement and Adjustments / HDD / After Installing The New HDD Unit / Reinstallation

## If the customer is using the HDD Encryption Unit, the encryption key must be restored after replacing the HDD unit. For details, see the installation procedure for the HDD Encryption Unit.
## Technical Bulletin

Reissued:14-Dec-10

Date: 21-Apr-10

No.: RD081031b

### **RTB Reissue**

Model: V-C3

The items in *bold italics* were corrected or added.

| Subject:: Paper Thickness for Tray1,2 and 3        |   |               | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |  |  |
|--|---|---------------|------------------------------|--|--|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQM Dept |   |               |                              |  |  |
| Classification:                                    | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Other ()</li> </ul> | Part informat | tion<br>eive                 | <ul> <li>Action required</li> <li>Service manual revision</li> <li>Retrofit information</li> </ul> |  |

Note: The following display errors were corrected with System/Copy firmware ver1.02.

### Important note about the paper thickness display for Trays 1, 2

- As shown below, the paper thickness for Tray 1 and 2 is displayed as "170-249g/m<sup>2</sup>". However, the maximum thickness supported by this model on Tray 1 and 2 is 216g/m<sup>2</sup>.
- Therefore, please advise customers not to load paper with a thickness greater than 216g/m<sup>2</sup> in Tray 1 and 2. Otherwise, a paper jam may occur.

| per Type: Tray 1 |                 |                  |                   | Cancel          | OK                           |
|------------------|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| Paper Type       |                 |                  | ►Paper Thic       | kness           |                              |
| Do not Display   | Recycled Paper  | Colour Paper 1   | Thin P<br>52-65   | aper<br>g/m2    | Plain Paper 1<br>66–80g/m2   |
| Colour Paper 2   | Letterhead      | Preprinted Paper | Plain Pa          | aper 2          | Middle Thick                 |
| Bond Paper       | Cardstock       | Prepunched Paper | 81-100            | lg/m2           | 101-127g/m2                  |
| Special Paper 1  | Special Paper 2 |                  | Thick P<br>128–16 | aper 1<br>9g/m2 | Thick Paper 2<br>170–249g/m2 |
|                  |                 |                  | ► Apply Dup       | lex             |                              |
|                  |                 |                  | Ye                | s               | No                           |
|                  |                 |                  | Apply Aut         | o Paper Select  |                              |
|                  |                 |                  | Vo                | c               | No                           |

[User Tools]  $\rightarrow$  [System Settings]  $\rightarrow$  [Tray Paper Settings]  $\rightarrow$  [Paper Type: Tray 1] or [Paper Type: Tray 2]

| RICOH              |
|--------------------|
| Reissued:14-Dec-10 |

Model: V-C3

Date: 21-Apr-10 No.: RD081031b

Important note about the paper thickness display for Tray 3

- As shown below, the paper thickness for Tray 3 is displayed as "250-300g/m<sup>2</sup>". However, the maximum thickness supported by this model on Tray 3 is 256g/m<sup>2</sup>.
- Therefore, please advise customers not to load paper with a thickness greater than 256g/m<sup>2</sup> in Tray 3. Otherwise, a paper jam may occur.

| 🔞 System S         | ettings         |                  |                              | Exit                         |
|--------------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Paper Type: Tray 3 |                 |                  | Cance                        | и ок                         |
| ▶Paper Type        |                 |                  | ▶ Paper Thickness            |                              |
| Do not Display     | Recycled Paper  | Colour Paper 1   | Thin Paper<br>52–65g/m2      | Plain Paper 1<br>66-80g/m2   |
| Colour Paper 2     | Letterhead      | Preprinted Paper | Plain Paper 2                | Middle Thick                 |
| Bond Paper         | Cardstock       | Prepunched Paper | 81-100g/m2                   | 101-127g/m2                  |
| Special Paper 1    | Special Paper 2 |                  | Thick Paper 1<br>128–169a/m2 | Thick Paper 2<br>170-249g/m2 |
|                    |                 |                  | Thick Paper 3<br>250–300g/m2 |                              |
|                    |                 |                  | ► Apply Duplex               |                              |
|                    |                 |                  | Yes                          | No                           |
|                    |                 |                  | ► Apply Auto Paper Se        | lect                         |
|                    | 1/2 🔺           | Previous 🔻 Next  | Yes                          | No                           |

[User Tools] → [System Settings] → [Tray Paper Settings] → [Paper Type: Tray 3]

# Technical Bulletin

#### **PAGE: 1/2**

| Model: V-C3                                       |                   |           | Dat    | e: 30-Apr- | 10         | No.: RD081032     |
|---|-------------------|-----------|--------|------------|------------|-------------------|
| Subject: Horizontal band 14mm (0.552inch) width   |                   |           |        | Prepare    | d by: H. M | Matsui            |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1st PQM Dept |                   |           |        |            |            |                   |
| Classification:                                   | ☐ Troubleshooting | Part info | ormat  | tion       | Action     | n required        |
|   | Mechanical        | Electric  | al     |            | Servic     | e manual revision |
|   | Paper path        | 🗌 Transm  | it/rec | eive       | Retro      | fit information   |
|   | Product Safety    | Other (   |        | )          | Tier 2     |                   |

### SYMPTOM

Dirty horizontal bands [A] appear at intervals of 40mm, especially under low-temperature conditions.



### CAUSE

Under low-temperature conditions, paper dust tends to build up on the ITB and ITB cleaning blade (especially in the area corresponding to the position of the Paper Feed Roller [B] in the paper feed unit). These areas are damaged, and this appears on the paper as horizontal bands.





### ACTION

Connect the Upper Tray Heater [C] and Lower Tray Heater [D] according to the procedure in the Service Manual.

Location of procedure in Service Manual: PDF version: pg. 88

HTML version: Main Chapters > Installation > Main Machine D081/D082 > Installation > Connect the Upper and Lower Tray Heaters





**PAGE: 1/2** 

Model: V-C3

Date: 18-May-10

No.: RD081033

| Subject:: Color                                     | Adjustment for Connecte   | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi                  |                 |
|---|---|---|-----------------|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |   |   |                 |
| Classification:                                     | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Other ()</li> </ul> | Part informat     Electrical     Transmit/rec | Action required |

### Service Manual Revision

Please replace FSM Pg.561, 562 with the following.

<u>Pg.561</u>

#### Color Adjustment for Connected Copiers

This procedure may be required for copiers after they are connected with the Copy Connector Type 3260 B328-11. Do this procedure only if you or the customer notices that the color quality between the two copiers is different.

The scanner masking parameter and printer gamma curve are adjusted at the factory for each machine. However, small differences between machines may arise due to fluctuations in the tolerances of scanner or image processing components.

The following two adjustments calibrate these differences to within acceptable standards. **1. Color Adjustment with Connection Kit Color Test Chart (***P*/N VSST9502**)** 

This adjusts the scanner masking parameter of each machine [A], [B] connected with the Copier Connection Kit B328. The scanner masking parameter is adjusted to equalize the scanner input with the scanner output.

#### 2. ACC (Auto Color Calibration)

This adjusts the printer gamma curves [E], [F] of each machine connected with the Copy Connector Type 3260 B328-11.

## Technical Bulletin

Model: V-C3

Date: 18-May-10

No.: RD081033

Pg.562



- [A] Scanner masking parameter Machine 1
- [B] Scanner masking parameter Machine 2
- [C] HDD Machine 1
- [D] HDD Machine 2
- [E] Printer gamma curve Machine 1
- [F] Printer gamma curve Machine 2

### For Scanner Glass

#### To adjust the main machine:

- 1. Place the Connection Kit Color Test Chart (**P/N: VSST9502**) on the exposure glass, with the arrow mark on the chart aligned with the left rear corner.
- 2. Do **SP4954 001** and touch [Execute] and confirm the "Completed" message appears. If "Failed" message appears after touching [Execute], do the procedure again.
- 3. After doing **SP4954 001**, do the ACC procedure described in the "Installation" section for the main machine.

#### To adjust the sub machine:

1. Do Steps 1 to 3 for the sub machine.

#### Compare the results

- 2. Set the two machines for full color, and do some sample color copies.
- 3. Compare the results from the two copiers. If the results are not same, do the procedure again from step 1.

### For CIS of ADF

#### To adjust the main machine:

- 1. Load the Connection Kit Color Test Chart (P/N: VSST9502) in the ADF so that the blank side is facing up and the arrow on the chart is at the ADF's left rear corner.
- 2. Do **SP4958 001** and touch [Execute] and confirm the "Completed" message appears. If "Failed" message appears after touching [Execute], do the procedure again.
- 3. After doing **SP4958 001**, do the ACC procedure described in the "Installation" section for the main machine.

#### To adjust the sub machine:

1. Do Steps 1 to 3 for the sub machine.

#### Compare the results

- 1. Set the two machines for full color, and do some sample color copies.
- 2. Compare the results from the two copiers. If the results are not same, do the procedure again from step 1.



Model: V-C3

Date: 18-May-10

No.: RD081034

| Subject:: Paper Thickness for Duplex Mode          |   |   | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |  |  |
|--|---|---|------------------------------|--|--|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQM Dept |   |   |                              |  |  |
| Classification:                                    | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Other ()</li> </ul> | Part informat     Electrical     Transmit/rec | tion<br>eive                 | <ul> <li>Action required</li> <li>Service manual revision</li> <li>Retrofit information</li> </ul> |  |

### **Service Manual Correction**

The paper thickness supported in duplex mode was corrected to 60-169g/m<sup>2</sup>.

pg.6

|              | Tray 1       | $52.3 - 216 \text{ g/m}^2$                 |  |  |
|--------------|--------------|--|--|--|
|              | Tray 2       | 14 Bond – 80 lb Cover                      |  |  |
|              |              | 52.3 – 256 g/m <sup>2</sup>                |  |  |
| Paper weight | Tray 3       | 14 Bond – 90 lb Cover                      |  |  |
|              | Bypass       | 52.3 - 300 g/m <sup>2</sup>                |  |  |
|              |              | 14 lb Bond- 110 lb Cover                   |  |  |
|              | Durlau an da | 60 - <del>216</del> g/m <sup>2</sup>       |  |  |
|              | Duplex mode  | 17 lb Bond – 90 lb Index                   |  |  |
|              |              |  |  |  |
|              |              | 60- <b>169g</b> /m <sup>2</sup> is correct |  |  |



Model: V-C3

Date: 14-Jun-10

No.: RD081035

| Subject:: File Format Converter (D377-04)          |   |               | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |  |
|--|---|---------------|------------------------------|--|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQM Dept |   |               |                              |  |
| Classification:                                    | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Other ()</li> </ul> | Part informat | tion<br>eive                 | <ul> <li>Action required</li> <li>Service manual revision</li> <li>Retrofit information</li> </ul> |

### **Service Manual Correction**

pg.260

**Delete** Steps 6 and 7, as shown below.

**Note:** It is not possible to check whether or not the File Format Converter is installed using the SMC.

Installation



b737i108

- 1. Remove the cover of Slot **A** [A] (*k* x2).
- 2. Touch a metal surface to discharge any static electricity from your hands.
- 3. Put the interface board [B] in Slot B.
- 4. Confirm that the board is inserted completely, then fasten it ( $\Re x$  2).
- 5. Turn the machine off and on.
- 6. Enter the SP mode and do SP5990 to print an SMC Report.
- 7. Read the report and confirm that the interface board is installed correctly.

## Technical Bulletin

Reissued:23-Jul-10

Model: V-C3

Date: 15-Jun-10

No.: RD081036a

#### **RTB Reissue**

| The items in | bold italics were | corrected or added. |
|--------------|-------------------|---------------------|
|--------------|-------------------|---------------------|

| Subject:: Multiple Network Support Firmware issues affecting: Scan to SMB Windows Authentication |   |               | Preparec     | l by: Takeshi Toriumi  |
|--|---|---------------|--------------|--|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQM Dept   |   |               |              |  |
| Classification:  | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Other ()</li> </ul> | Part informat | tion<br>eive | <ul> <li>Action required</li> <li>Service manual revision</li> <li>Retrofit information</li> </ul> |

#### Symptom

There are some issues related to the network support firmware for Windows 7. Currently, there are 2 Network firmware modules to choose from and each has its own problems.

| Version | Program No. | Effective Date        |
|---------|-------------|-----------------------|
| 9.53.1  | D0815767C   | May 2010 production   |
| 9.53    | D0815767B   | April 2008 production |

Both firmware v9.53.1 and v9.53 are affected by the following issue:

Problem : Unable to retrieve the Windows group name from a Windows 2008 R2 server, during Windows Authentication. Because of this, logged in users will only be granted the privileges of the "Default Group".

Conditions of occurrence: The authenticating server is Windows 2008 R2.

*Cause: The group request used by GW devices is no longer supported by Windows Server 2008 R2.* 

Workaround: None.

Firmware v9.53.1 is affected by the following issue:

Problem. Scan to Folder destinations cannot be selected by browsing. When a user attempts to select a destination by browsing, an error is displayed.

## Technical Bulletin

Reissued:23-Jul-10

| Model: V-C3    |   | Date: 15-Jun-10      | No.: RD081036a |
|----------------|---|----------------------|----------------|
| Browse Network |   | Cancel OK            |                |
| Callo One      | Cannot find the specified path.<br>Please check the settings. | Exit                 |                |
|                | System Status Job L   | 28 AUG 2009<br>20:05 |                |

Conditions of occurrence: The destination is Windows 7 or Windows Server 2008 R2.

Cause: As of Windows 7/Windows Server 2008 R2, Samba 3.0.23 or later is required in order to establish an smb connection. Current GWs have older versions of Samba.

Workaround: None. Users will have to manually enter the paths to their destinations.

#### Firmware v9.53 is affected by the following 6 issues:

#### Firmware v9.53 is affected by the following 5 issues:

#### Problem 1. Unable to Scan to SMB to Windows 7 and 2008.

Conditions of occurrence: The destination is Windows 7 or 2008 and the Windows Online ID provider is installed. http://windows.microsoft.com/en-US/windows7/online-id-providers

Cause: Firmware A was not designed to handle the extra information included by Windows Online ID provider.

Workaround: None.

Problem 2. Unable to Scan to SMB to Windows 98/98SE/Me/NT 4.0 Workstation/NT4.0 Server. Conditions of occurrence: The destination is Windows 98/98SE/Me/NT 4.0 Workstation/NT4.0 Server and is specified using an IP address instead of a hostname.

Cause: These operating systems don't allow SMB connections via IP address. The device should fail over to a hostname, but it doesn't.

Workaround: Specify destinations using a hostname.

**Problem 3. Unable to Scan to SMB when the domain name is not an FQDN.** Conditions of occurrence:

### Reissued:23-Jul-10

| Model: V-C3 | Date: 15-Jun-10 | No.: RD081036a |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|
|             |                 |                |

The username is something like "username@example", not "username@example.com"

Cause: The Ricoh MFP doesn't adhere to the NTLMv2 specification which doesn't allow the use of usernames in formats other than FQDN.

Workaround: Use FQDNs when specifying a user name.

#### Problem 4. Scan to SMB authentication error results in an SC 899 and device stall.

Conditions of occurrence: The device tries and fails to login to a Windows scan destination 3 times. This is intermittent, occurring about 20% of the time that these conditions are met.

Cause: Invalid memory access.

Workaround: None. Please reboot.

## Problem 5. Windows Authentication fails if the username/password includes European characters.

Conditions of occurrence: The username/password contains European characters

Cause: The character table used by the MFP for Windows authentication doesn't include these characters.

Workaround: None.

## Problem 6. Unable to retrieve the Windows group name from a Windows 2008 R2 server, during Windows Authentication.

Conditions of occurrence: The authenticating server is Windows 2008 R2.

Cause: The group request used by GW devices is no longer supported by Windows Server 2008 R2.

Workaround: None.

#### Action

These problems are going to be fixed in the Network firmware version to be released at the beginning of September 2010. For now, please just select whichever best meets your customers' needs.

### Reissued: 05-Nov-10

| Model: Finisher SR4030/40                          | Date: 22-Jun-09              | No.: RD062020f |
|--|------------------------------|----------------|
| RTB Reissue  |                              |                |
| I ne items in bold italics have been added.        | 1                            |                |
| Subject: Firmware Release Note: Finisher SR4030/40 | Prepared by: T. <sup>-</sup> | Toriumi        |

|                  |                              | -                | -                       |
|------------------|------------------------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Overse | as Tech Support Sec., 1st PQ | M Dept.          |                         |
| Classification:  | Troubleshooting              | Part information | Action required         |
|                  | Mechanical                   | Electrical       | Service manual revision |
|                  | Paper path                   | Transmit/receive | Retrofit information    |
|                  | Product Safety               | Other ( )        | 🖂 Tier 2                |

This RTB has been issued to announce the firmware release information for the **Finisher SR4030/40**.

| Version   | Program No. | Effective Date            |  |
|-----------|-------------|---------------------------|--|
| 01.100:27 | D3735112F   | November 2010 production  |  |
| 1.90:26   | D3735112E   | September 2010 production |  |
| 1.08:25   | D3735112D   | May 2010 production       |  |
| 1.06:22   | D3735112C   | December 2009 production  |  |
| 1.04:20   | D3735112B   | August 2009 production    |  |
| 1.03:19   | D3735112A   | 1st Mass production       |  |

| Version   | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected  |  |  |
|-----------|---|--|--|
|           | Sumntom Corrected   |  |  |
| 01.100.27 | Symptom Conected.   |  |  |
|           | Standardization with other models.  |  |  |
| 1.90:26   | Symptom Corrected:  |  |  |
|           | After the main switch is turned on, SC725 (Finisher exit guide plate motor          |  |  |
|           | error) occurs.  |  |  |
| 1.08:25   | Symptoms corrected:   |  |  |
|           | 1. A jam occurs due to the shift motor not returning to its home position           |  |  |
|           | properly  |  |  |
|           | 2 The indicers shift farther apart little by little with each print job if there is |  |  |
|           | anly one short hours printed and Staple is selected                                 |  |  |
|           | The adve of the pener in the suit travia dirty at about 0500 sheets due to          |  |  |
|           | 3. The edge of the paper in the exit tray is dirty at about 2500 sheets, due to     |  |  |
|           | contact with the belt of the roller.  |  |  |
| 1.06:22   | Symptom corrected:  |  |  |
|           | Jam 111 or Jam131 occurs due to a shift motor control issue.                        |  |  |
| 1.04:20   | Symptom corrected:  |  |  |
|           | A paper jam occurs with two-spot stapling on one sheet of paper.                    |  |  |
| 1.03:19   | -   |  |  |



Model: V-C3

Date: 05-Jul-10

No.: RD081037

| Subject:: Paper Jam(Code 64) when fed from bypass  |   |  | Prepared by: Ta | akeshi Toriumi  |
|--|---|--|-----------------|---|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQM Dept |   |  |                 |   |
| Classification:                                    | <ul> <li>☐ Troubleshooting</li> <li>☐ Mechanical</li> <li>☐ Paper path</li> <li>☐ Other ()</li> </ul> | Part informat     Electrical     Transmit/reco | ion 🗌 Actio     | on required<br>rice manual revision<br>ofit information |

### SYMPTOM

Paper Jam (Code 64) occurs if **one** sheet is fed from the bypass tray, and then another sheet is fed in a different feed direction.

Example: **One** sheet of A4 LEF is fed, followed by a sheet of A4 SEF.



**Note:** Once the jam occurs, the condition cannot be cleared through jam recovery or clearing the job. To clear the condition, the main power must be turned off/on.

#### CAUSE

Engine firmware bug

### ACTION

Update the Engine firmware to **ver1.06:06 or newer**.

# Technical Bulletin

### **PAGE: 1/1**

| Model: V-C3 D                                      |                 |           | Dat                          | e: 05-Aug-10 | No.: RD081038      |
|--|-----------------|-----------|------------------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| Subject:: Jam Code 146                             |                 |           | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |              |                    |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQM Dept |                 |           |                              |              |                    |
| Classification:                                    | Troubleshooting | Part info | ormat                        | tion 🗌 Actio | n required         |
|  | Mechanical      | Electric  | al                           | 🛛 Serv       | ce manual revision |
|  | Paper path      | 🗌 Transm  | it/rec                       | eive 🗌 Retro | ofit information   |
|  | Other ()        |           |                              |              |                    |

### **Service Manual Revision**

Add the following description for Jam Code -146.

### 4. Appendix: Service Program Mode Tables

Pg. 432

| 7504 | Paper Jam Loc (Fin2) | 3000-Sheet Feeder B830 |
|------|----------------------|------------------------|
| -146 | Pre-Stack Jam        | Jam at Pre-Stack       |

Technical Bulletin

Reissued: 12-Apr-12 Model: v-c3

Date: 20-Aug-10

No.: RD081039f

#### **RTB Reissue**

| The items in bol   | d italics have been correc | ted or added.    |                         |
|--|----------------------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| Subject: Firmware Release Note: Java VM v7 std UpdateTool    |                            |                  | Prepared by: H. Tamaki  |
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/Printer Tech Service Dept. |                            |                  |                         |
| Classification:  | Troubleshooting            | Part information | Action required         |
|  | 🗌 Mechanical               | Electrical       | Service manual revision |
|  | Paper path                 | Transmit/receive | Retrofit information    |
|  | Product Safety             | Other ( )        | 🛛 Tier 2                |

This RTB has been issued to announce the firmware release information for the Java VM v7 std UpdateTool.

| Version | Program No.   | Effective Date            | Availability of RFU |
|---------|---------------|---------------------------|---------------------|
| 7.17.04 | D0815792H_upd | March 2012 production     | Not available       |
| 7.16.07 | D0815792G_upd | November 2011 production  | Not available       |
| 7.14.03 | D0815792F_upd | June 2011 production      | Not available       |
| 7.09.03 | D0815792E_upd | December 2010 production  | Not available       |
| 7.08.02 | D0815792D_upd | October 2010 production   | Not available       |
| 7.06.04 | D0815792C_upd | September 2010 production | Not available       |
| 7.03.09 | D0815792B_upd | May 2010 production       | Not available       |
| 7.01    | -             | 1st Mass production       | Not available       |

Note: Definition of Availability of RFU via @Remote

"Available": The firmware can be updated via RFU or SD card. "Not available": The firmware can only be updated via SD card.

| Version | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected  |
|---------|---|
| 7.17.04 | Other changes:  |
|         | 1. A software button was added to the Copier screen, which can be           |
|         | assigned to specific SDK applications.                                      |
|         | Note: In order to utilize this change, the SDK application itself must also |
|         | support this functionality. For details, see the Release Notes for each     |
|         | application.  |
|         | 2. Software Keyboard type was changed for Taiwan model.                     |
| 7.16.07 | Symptom corrected:  |
|         | 1. SDK/J starting logo screen does not change.                              |
|         | 2. Vulnerability to the re-negotiation of SSL/TLS.                          |
|         | 3. Multi installation to HDD fails for VM card Type-C applications.         |
|         | 4. Other minor bug corrections.   |
|         |   |
|         | Other changes:  |
|         | 1. Kerberos certification corresponding to RC4-HMAC code form.              |
|         | 2. VM card Type-C application remote installation.                          |
|         | 3. Support for eDC-i1.2.  |
| 7.14.03 | Supported:  |
| ĺ       | Support for eDC-i1.2 and Remote Install Manager V1.1 was added.             |
|         |   |

### Reissued: 12-Apr-12

| Model: <b>v-c3</b> Date: 20-Aug-10 No.: RD08 |  |  |   |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|---|--|--|--|--|
| Version                                      | Modified Points or S   | symptom Corrected  |   |  |  |  |  |
|  | <ul> <li>Fixed:</li> <li>May not be able to stop the application screen if an SDK application takes mo</li> <li>The device may stall if an SDK application takes mo</li> <li>SC997 can occur if an SDK application up.</li> <li>If machine authentication is enabled, p the User Tools/Counter/Enquiry screen as a machine administrator.</li> <li>If a user was logged in when the On/C the "Cannot Logout" message is displaused to turn the device on. The messathas been logged out.</li> <li>The maximum paper size retrieved from the state of the s</li></ul> | n from the User Tools/C<br>are than 15 seconds to s<br>ation takes more than 15<br>n takes more than 15 se<br>pressing the System Set<br>n has no effect, even wi<br>off button is used to turn<br>ayed the next time the C<br>age is displayed even th<br>m the device is larger th | ounter/Enquiry<br>tart up.<br>5 seconds to<br>econds start<br>ttings button on<br>nen logged in<br>the device off,<br>Dn/Off button is<br>ough the user |  |  |  |  |
| 7.09.03                                      | maximum scannable/printable size.Others:The Java VM v7.xx update tool has been merged into a single download object(self-extracting archive) which can be used for all supported models. A list(list.txt) of supported VM card part nos. is included in the update archive.Minor bug correction  |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| 7.08.02                                      | Symptom corrected:<br>The sender's name does not appear on the<br>receiving end.   | e FAX when it is printed   | out at the  |  |  |  |  |
|  | <ul> <li>Fixed:</li> <li>1. The JavaVM would not update the DNS server address after the initial cache, which could eventually prevent the SDK application and DNS server from communicating.</li> <li>Note: This issue does not affect the device's ability to communicate with the DNS server.</li> </ul>  |  |   |  |  |  |  |
|  | <ol> <li>Notification for jobs cancelled by the "F<br/>were not passed back to the SDK appli<br/>application to incorrectly think that the</li> </ol>  | Print Volume Use Limitatication. This causes the job completed successf  | tion" function<br>SDK<br>ully.  |  |  |  |  |
| 7.06.04                                      | <ol> <li>Symptom Corrected:</li> <li>The Java VM may enter a deadlock stat that is waiting for I/O data.</li> <li>The username used for Basic Authention on the MFP's display panel if the usern</li> <li>If the auto-off timer of the device is set is set to automatically start up, SC997</li> <li>The USB card reader may stop working unplugged.</li> </ol>   | ate if one thread tries to<br>cation cannot be display<br>name is 20 characters (b<br>to 1 minute and any SE<br>can occur.<br>g if plugged in immediat   | close a thread<br>/ed correctly<br>bytes) long.<br>DK application<br>rely after being   |  |  |  |  |

RICOH Reissued: 12-Apr-12

#### Model: v-c3 Date: 20-Aug-10 No.: RD081039f **Modified Points or Symptom Corrected** Version 7.03.09 Symptom Corrected: 1. If the machine is turned off just after entering Energy Saver mode, it will not be able to enter Energy Saver mode from that point on (the SDK Java platform cannot be started). 2. Wording errors in the display messages used in the SDK application initial settings screen. 3. Installation fails if the FAT block of the SD card is less than 1024 bytes (1KB). 4. Temporary files stored in the SD card are not deleted after completing a remote installation of the SDK Java Platform. 5. When the two processes listed below occur simultaneously, the MFP might enter Sleep mode. - The MFP tries to enter Energy Saver mode. - An SDK application (running on the same MFP) tries to prevent the MFP from entering Energy Saver mode. 6. When User Code Authentication is used by a MFP and an SDK application installed on that MFP, users are logged out of the SDK application if the MFP's embedded scanner application's destination registration function ("Prg. Dest." button) is used. 7.01 1st Mass production



**PAGE: 1/8** 

Model: V-C3

Date: 24-Aug-10

No.: RD081040

| Subject: SP580   | 3 Input Check                 | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |      |                                     |
|------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|------|-------------------------------------|
| From: 1st Overse | eas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQ | M Dept.                      |      |                                     |
| Classification:  | Troubleshooting               | Part informat                | tion | Action required                     |
|                  | Mechanical                    | Electrical                   |      | $\boxtimes$ Service manual revision |
|                  | Paper path                    | Transmit/rec                 | eive | Retrofit information                |
|                  | Other ()                      |                              |      |                                     |

### **Service Manual Revision**

The Input Check information shown below was newly added to the Service Manual. "4. Appendix: Service Program Mode Tables (Pg.325)"

| 5803 | Input Check        | Bit     |  |               |
|------|--------------------|---------|--|---------------|
|      | Use these SPs to d | o the i | nput check for the electrical components of the main | machine.      |
| -001 | Paper Feed 1       | 7       | Front Side Fence Open Sensor                         | 0: Off 1:On   |
|      |                    | 6       | Rear Side Fence Open Sensor                          | 0: Off 1:On   |
|      |                    | 5       | Front Side Fence Close Sensor                        | 0: Off 1:On   |
|      |                    | 4       | Rear Side Fence Close Sensor                         | 0: Off 1:On   |
|      |                    | 3       | Tandem Tray Near End Sensor                          | See Table     |
|      |                    | 2       | Tandem Tray Paper Height Sensor1                     | Below         |
|      |                    | 1       | Tandem Tray Paper Height Sensor2                     | ("Tandem Tray |
|      |                    | 0       | Tandem Tray Paper Height Sensor3                     | Paper Height  |
|      |                    |         |  | Sensors")     |

#### **Tandem Tray Paper Height Sensors**

The percentage below shows remaining amount of paper.

|               | 100 | )% | 50 | 1% | 30 | )% | 1( | )% |
|---------------|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Near End      | 0   | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  |
| Paper Height1 | 0   | 0  | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 0  |
| Paper Height2 | 0   | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 0  | 0  | 0  |
| Paper Height3 | 0   | 1  | 1  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  |

| -002 | Paper Feed 2 | 7 | Tandem Tray Left Paper Detection      | 0:Not Set 1:Set |
|------|--------------|---|---------------------------------------|-----------------|
|      |              | 6 | Tandem Tray Right Paper Detection     | 0:Not Set 1:Set |
|      |              | 5 | Tandem Transport Fence HP Sensor      | 0: Off 1:On     |
|      |              | 4 | Tandem Transport Fence Push Sensor    | 0: Off 1:On     |
|      |              | 3 | Tandem Tray Right Bottom Plate Sensor | 0: Off 1:On     |
|      |              | 2 | Tandem Tray Left Paper End Sensor     | 0:Not Detected  |
|      |              |   |                                       | 1:Detected      |
|      |              | 1 | Not Used                              | -               |
|      |              | 0 | Tray Type Detection                   | Always "0"      |

| -003 Paper Feed | 3 7 | 2nd Tray Paper Size Detection 1 | See Table    |
|-----------------|-----|---------------------------------|--------------|
|                 | 1   |                                 | Deleve       |
|                 | 6   | 2nd Tray Paper Size Detection 2 | Below        |
|                 | 5   | 2nd Tray Paper Size Detection 3 | ("Paper Size |
|                 | 4   | 2nd Tray Paper Size Detection 4 | Table")      |
|                 | 3   | 2nd Tray Paper Size Detection 5 |              |
|                 | 2   | Not Used                        | -            |
|                 | 1   | Not Used                        | -            |
|                 | 0   | Not Used                        | -            |



Model: V-C3

Date: 24-Aug-10

No.: RD081040

| -004 | Paper Feed 4 | 7 | 3rd Tray Paper Size Detection 1 | See Table    |
|------|--------------|---|---------------------------------|--------------|
|      |              | 6 | 3rd Tray Paper Size Detection 2 | Below        |
|      |              | 5 | 3rd Tray Paper Size Detection 3 | ("Paper Size |
|      |              | 4 | 3rd Tray Paper Size Detection 4 | Table")      |
|      |              | 3 | 3rd Tray Paper Size Detection 5 |              |
|      |              | 2 | Not Used                        | -            |
|      |              | 1 | Not Used                        | -            |
|      |              | 0 | Not Used                        | -            |

#### Paper Size Table

| Paper Size     | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 |
|----------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 12"x18"        | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |
| A3             | 1     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 1     |
| B4             | 1     | 0     | 0     | 1     | 1     |
| A4SEF          | 0     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 1     |
| A4LEF          | 1     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     |
| B5SEF          | 1     | 0     | 1     | 0     | 1     |
| B5LEF          | 0     | 0     | 0     | 1     | 1     |
| A5SEF          | 1     | 1     | 1     | 0     | 1     |
| A5LEF          | 0     | 1     | 1     | 0     | 1     |
| 11"x17"        | 1     | 1     | 1     | 0     | 0     |
| 8.5"x14"       | 1     | 0     | 1     | 1     | 0     |
| LTSEF          | 1     | 1     | 0     | 1     | 0     |
| LTLEF          | 0     | 1     | 1     | 0     | 0     |
| HLTSEF         | 0     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 0     |
| HLTLEF         | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 0     |
| 8.5"x13"       | 1     | 1     | 0     | 1     | 1     |
| 8.25"x13"      | 0     | 1     | 0     | 1     | 1     |
| 8"x13"         | 0     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |
| 7.25"x10.5"SEF | 1     | 0     | 1     | 0     | 0     |
| 7.25"x10.5"LEF | 0     | 0     | 1     | 1     | 1     |
| 8KSEF          | 0     | 0     | 1     | 1     | 0     |
| 16KSEF         | 1     | 0     | 0     | 1     | 0     |
| 16KLEF         | 1     | 0     | 1     | 1     | 1     |

| -005 | Paper Feed 5 | 7 | Not Used                          | -                    |
|------|--------------|---|-----------------------------------|----------------------|
|      |              | 6 | Not Used                          | -                    |
|      |              | 5 | 2nd Tray Paper Detection          | See table below      |
|      |              | 4 | 3rd Tray Paper Detection          | ("Paper Height, Near |
|      |              |   |                                   | End")                |
|      |              | 3 | Not Used                          | -                    |
|      |              | 2 | Not Used                          | -                    |
|      |              | 1 | 2nd Tray Paper Near End Detection | See table below      |
|      |              | 0 | 3rd Tray Paper Near End Detection | ("Paper Height, Near |
|      |              |   |                                   | End Table")          |

### Paper Height, Near End Table

|              | 100% | 50% | 30% | 10% |
|--------------|------|-----|-----|-----|
| Paper Height | 0    | 1   | 1   | 0   |
| Near End     | 0    | 0   | 1   | 1   |



**PAGE: 3/8** 

Model: V-C3

Date: 24-Aug-10

| -006 | Paper Feed 6 | 7 | 1st Tray Upper Limit Sensor  | 0:Upper Limit<br>1:Not Upper Limit |
|------|--------------|---|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
|      |              | 6 | Not Used                     | -                                  |
|      |              | 5 | 2nd Tray Upper Limit Sensor  | 0:Upper Limit                      |
|      |              |   |                              | 1:Not Upper Limit                  |
|      |              | 4 | 3rd Tray Upper Limit Sensor  | 0:Upper Limit                      |
|      |              |   |                              | 1:Not Upper Limit                  |
|      |              | 3 | 1st Tray Paper End Detection | 0:Not Detected                     |
|      |              |   |                              | 1:Detected                         |
|      |              | 2 | Not Used                     | -                                  |
|      |              | 1 | 2nd Tray Paper End Detection | 0:Not Detected                     |
|      |              |   |                              | 1:Detected                         |
|      |              | 0 | 3rd Tray Paper End Detection | 0:Not Detected                     |
|      |              |   |                              | 1 Detected                         |

| -007 | Paper Feed 7 | 7 | 1st Feed Sensor               | 0:Paper Not Detected |
|------|--------------|---|-------------------------------|----------------------|
|      |              |   |                               | 1:Paper Detected     |
|      |              | 6 | Not Used                      | -                    |
|      |              | 5 | 2nd Feed Sensor               | 0:Paper Not Detected |
|      |              |   |                               | 1:Paper Detected     |
|      |              | 4 | 3rd Feed Sensor               | 0:Paper Not Detected |
|      |              |   |                               | 1:Paper Detected     |
|      |              | 3 | 1st Vertical Transport Sensor | 0:Paper Not Detected |
|      |              |   |                               | 1:Paper Detected     |
|      |              | 2 | Not Used                      | -                    |
|      |              | 1 | 2nd Vertical Transport Sensor | 0:Paper Not Detected |
|      |              |   |                               | 1:Paper Detected     |
|      |              | 0 | 3rd Vertical Transport Sensor | 0:Paper Not Detected |
|      |              |   |                               | 1:Paper Detected     |

| -008 | -008 Paper Trans 1 | 7 | Duplex Transport Sensor: Left   | 0:Paper Not Detected<br>1:Paper Detected |
|------|--------------------|---|---------------------------------|--|
|      |                    | 6 | Duplex Transport Sensor: Middle | 0:Paper Not Detected<br>1:Paper Detected |
|      |                    | 5 | Duplex Transport Sensor: Right  | 0:Paper Not Detected<br>1:Paper Detected |
|      |                    | 4 | Duplex Exit Sensor              | 0:Paper Not Detected<br>1:Paper Detected |
|      |                    | 3 | Duplex Entrance Sensor          | 0:Paper Not Detected<br>1:Paper Detected |
|      |                    | 2 | Not Used                        | -  |
|      |                    | 1 | Not Used                        | -  |
|      |                    | 0 | Not Used                        | -  |



Model: V-C3

Date: 24-Aug-10

| -009 Paper Trans 2 | 7 | Not Used | -                            |                      |
|--------------------|---|----------|------------------------------|----------------------|
|                    |   | 6        | Relay Sensor                 | 0:Paper Not Detected |
|                    |   |          |                              | 1:Paper Detected     |
|                    |   | 5        | Registration Sensor          | 0:Paper Not Detected |
|                    |   |          |                              | 1:Paper Detected     |
|                    |   | 4<br>3   | Opening-Closing Guide Sensor | 0:Open 1:Close       |
|                    |   |          | Not Used                     | -                    |
|                    |   | 2        | Paper Exit: Exit Sensor      | 0:Paper Not Detected |
|                    |   |          |                              | 1:Paper Detected     |
|                    |   | 1        | Paper Exit: Relay Sensor     | 0:Paper Not Detected |
|                    |   |          |                              | 1:Paper Detected     |
|                    | 0 | Not Used | -                            |                      |

| -010 Paper Trans 3 | aper Trans 3 | 7 | Paper Exit Tray Sensor         | 0:Not Full 1:Full                        |
|--------------------|--------------|---|--------------------------------|--|
|                    | 6            | 6 | Not Used                       | -  |
|                    | Ę            | 5 | Fusing: Paper Detection Sensor | 0:Paper Not Detected<br>1:Paper Detected |
|                    | 2            | 4 | Fusing Exit Sensor             | 0:Paper Not Detected<br>1:Paper Detected |
|                    | 3            | 3 | Fusing Pressure Sensor         | 0:OFF 1:ON                               |
|                    | 2            | 2 | Not Used                       | -  |
|                    |              | 1 | Not Used                       | -  |
|                    | (            | 0 | Not Used                       | -  |

| -011 Paper Trans 4 | 7 | DELL                       | -                    |
|--------------------|---|----------------------------|----------------------|
|                    | 6 | DELL                       | -                    |
|                    | 5 | DEU                        | _                    |
|                    | 4 |                            |                      |
|                    | 4 | DFU                        | -                    |
|                    | 3 | Bypass Paper End Detection | 0:Paper Detected     |
|                    |   |                            | 1:Paper Not Detected |
|                    | 2 | Not Used                   | -                    |
|                    | 1 | Not Used                   | -                    |
|                    | 0 | Not Used                   | -                    |

| -012 | Paper Trans 5 | 7 | LCT Feed Sensor                       | 0:Paper Detected<br>1:Paper Not Detected |
|------|---------------|---|---------------------------------------|--|
|      |               | 6 | LCT Transport Sensor                  | 0:Paper Detected<br>1:Paper Not Detected |
|      |               | 5 | LCT Exit Sensor                       | 0:Paper Detected<br>1:Paper Not Detected |
|      |               | 4 | LCT Upper Cover Open Detection SW     | 0:Close 1:Open                           |
|      |               | 3 | LCT Transport Cover Open Detection SW | 0:Close 1:Open                           |
|      |               | 2 | Not Used                              | -  |
|      |               | 1 | Not Used                              | -  |
|      |               | 0 | Not Used                              | -  |



**PAGE: 5/8** 

Model: V-C3

Date: 24-Aug-10

| -013 | Paper Trans 6 | 7 | Not Used | - |
|------|---------------|---|----------|---|
|      |               | 6 | Not Used | - |
|      |               | 5 | Not Used | - |
|      |               | 4 | Not Used | - |
|      |               | 3 | Not Used | - |
|      |               | 2 | Not Used | - |
|      |               | 1 | Not Used | - |
|      |               | 0 | Not Used | - |

| -014 | Drum Motor Lock | 7 | Y Drum Motor Lock  | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|------|-----------------|---|--------------------|-----------------|
|      |                 | 6 | C Drum Motor Lock  | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |                 | 5 | M Drum Motor Lock  | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |                 | 4 | Bk Drum Motor Lock | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |                 | 3 | Not Used           | -               |
|      |                 | 2 | Not Used           | -               |
|      |                 | 1 | Not Used           | -               |
|      |                 | 0 | Not Used           | -               |

| -015 | Development | 7 | Y Development Motor Lock  | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|------|-------------|---|---------------------------|-----------------|
|      | Motor Lock  | 6 | C Development Motor Lock  | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |             | 5 | M Development Motor Lock  | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |             | 4 | Bk Development Motor Lock | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |             | 3 | Not Used                  | -               |
|      |             | 2 | Not Used                  | -               |
|      |             | 1 | Not Used                  | -               |
|      |             | 0 | Not Used                  | -               |

| -016 | Drum Cleaning | 7 | Y Drum Cleaning Motor Lock  | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|------|---------------|---|-----------------------------|-----------------|
|      | Motor Lock    | 6 | C Drum Cleaning Motor Lock  | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |               | 5 | M Drum Cleaning Motor Lock  | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |               | 4 | Bk Drum Cleaning Motor Lock | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |               | 3 | Not Used                    | -               |
|      |               | 2 | Not Used                    | -               |
|      |               | 1 | Not Used                    | -               |
|      |               | 0 | Not Used                    | -               |

| -017 | Motor Lock: | 7 | ITB Motor Lock                  | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|------|-------------|---|---------------------------------|-----------------|
|      | Others      | 6 | PTR Motor Lock                  | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |             | 5 | DFU                             | -               |
|      |             | 4 | Used Toner Transport Motor Lock | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |             | 3 | Hopper Motor Lock               | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |             | 2 | Used Toner Motor Lock           | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |             | 1 | Not Used                        | -               |
|      |             | 0 | Not Used                        | -               |

| -018 F | an System 1 | 7 | Paper Exit Fan Lock    | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|--------|-------------|---|------------------------|-----------------|
|        |             | 6 | Duplex Fan Lock: Front | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|        |             | 5 | Duplex Fan Lock: Rear  | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|        |             | 4 | Not Used               | -               |
|        |             | 3 | Not Used               | -               |
|        |             | 2 | Not Used               | -               |
|        |             | 1 | Not Used               | -               |
|        |             | 0 | Not Used               | -               |

# Technical Bulletin

**PAGE: 6/8** 

Model: V-C3

Date: 24-Aug-10

| -019 | Fan System 2 | 7 | Fusing Fan Lock Front | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|------|--------------|---|-----------------------|-----------------|
|      |              | 6 | Fusing Fan Lock Rear  | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |              | 5 | Fusing Fan Sub Lock   | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |              | 4 | Peltier Fan Lock      | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |              | 3 | Not Used              | -               |
|      |              | 2 | Not Used              | -               |
|      |              | 1 | Not Used              | -               |
|      |              | 0 | Notlised              | -               |

| -020 | Fan System 3 | 7 | Controlling Box Cooling Fan Motor 2 Lock | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|------|--------------|---|--|-----------------|
|      |              | 6 | Controlling Box Cooling Fan Motor 1 Lock | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |              | 5 | Not Used                                 | -               |
|      |              | 4 | Not Used                                 | -               |
|      |              | 3 | Not Used                                 | -               |
|      |              | 2 | Not Used                                 | -               |
|      |              | 1 | Not Used                                 | -               |
|      |              | 0 | Not Used                                 | -               |

| -021 | Fan System 4 | 7 | Y PCU Fan Lock             | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|------|--------------|---|----------------------------|-----------------|
|      |              | 6 | C PCU Fan Lock             | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |              | 5 | M PCU Fan Lock             | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |              | 4 | Bk PCU Fan Lock            | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |              | 3 | Air Intake Fan: Drive Lock | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |              | 2 | Ozone Intake Fan Lock      | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |              | 1 | Ozone Exhaust Fan Lock     | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |              | 0 | Not Used                   | -               |

| -022 | High Volt SC1 | 7 | Y SC:Charge       | 0:No SC 1:SC Detected |
|------|---------------|---|-------------------|-----------------------|
|      |               | 6 | C SC:Charge       | 0:No SC 1:SC Detected |
|      |               | 5 | M SC:Charge       | 0:No SC 1:SC Detected |
|      |               | 4 | Bk SC:Charge      | 0:No SC 1:SC Detected |
|      |               | 3 | Y SC:Development  | 0:No SC 1:SC Detected |
|      |               | 2 | C SC:Development  | 0:No SC 1:SC Detected |
|      |               | 1 | M SC:Development  | 0:No SC 1:SC Detected |
|      |               | 0 | Bk SC:Development | 0:No SC 1:SC Detected |

| -023 High Volt SC2 | High Volt SC2 | 7 | Y SC:ITB       | 0:No SC 1:SC Detected |
|--------------------|---------------|---|----------------|-----------------------|
|                    | -             | 6 | C SC:ITB       | 0:No SC 1:SC Detected |
|                    |               | 5 | M SC:ITB       | 0:No SC 1:SC Detected |
|                    |               | 4 | Bk SC:ITB      | 0:No SC 1:SC Detected |
|                    |               | 3 | SC:PTR         | 0:No SC 1:SC Detected |
|                    |               | 2 | SC: Separation | 0:No SC 1:SC Detected |
|                    |               | 1 | Not Used       | -                     |
|                    |               | 0 | Not Used       | -                     |

| -024 | Paper Transfer | 7 | FC: ITB Sepatration Sensor | 0:Separated 1:Contact |
|------|----------------|---|----------------------------|-----------------------|
|      |                | 6 | Bk: ITBSeparation Sensor   | 0:Separated 1:Contact |
|      |                | 5 | PTR Separation Sensor      | 0:Separated 1:Contact |
|      |                | 4 | Not Used                   | -                     |
|      |                | 3 | Not Used                   | -                     |
|      |                | 2 | ITB Control Signal         | See table below (Bit  |
|      |                | 1 | ITB Control Signal         | Table:24)             |
|      |                | 0 | Not Used                   | -                     |

Model: V-C3

Date: 24-Aug-10

No.: RD081040

### Bit Table: 24

| Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Function                 |
|-------|-------|--------------------------|
| 0     | 0     | Belt Scale Control       |
| 0     | 1     | Encoder Control          |
| 1     | 0     | Belt or Sensor Defective |
| 1     | 1     | Belt or Sensor Defective |

| -025 | Toner Supply | 7 | Y Toner End Sensor  | 0 Detected 1:Not Detected |
|------|--------------|---|---------------------|---------------------------|
|      |              | 6 | C Toner End Sensor  | 0 Detected 1:Not Detected |
|      |              | 5 | M Toner End Sensor  | 0 Detected 1:Not Detected |
|      |              | 4 | Bk Toner End Sensor | 0 Detected 1:Not Detected |
|      |              | 3 | Not Used            | -                         |
|      |              | 2 | Not Used            | -                         |
|      |              | 1 | Not Used            | -                         |
|      |              | 0 | Not Used            | -                         |

| -026 | Set Detect | 7 | Pressure Roller Thermostat . High    | 0: Normal 1:Abnormal |
|------|------------|---|--------------------------------------|----------------------|
|      |            |   | Temp                                 |                      |
|      |            | 6 | Hot Roller Thermistor . High Temp    | 0: Normal 1:Abnormal |
|      |            | 5 | Heating Roller Temperataure Sensor . | 0: Normal 1:Abnormal |
|      |            |   | High Temp                            |                      |
|      |            | 4 | Not Used                             | -                    |
|      |            | 3 | Not Used                             | -                    |
|      |            | 2 | Not Used                             | -                    |
|      |            | 1 | Not Used                             | -                    |
|      |            | 0 | Not Used                             | -                    |

| -027 | Fusing Temp | 7 | Key Card Set              | 0:Not Set 1:Set |
|------|-------------|---|---------------------------|-----------------|
|      | Detect      | 6 | Key Counter Set           | 0:Not Set 1:Set |
|      |             | 5 | Bk Mechanical Counter Set | 0:Not Set 1:Set |
|      |             | 4 | FC Mechanical Counter Set | 0:Not Set 1:Set |
|      |             | 3 | Fusing Unit Set           | 0:Not Set 1:Set |
|      |             | 2 | Duplex Unit Set           | 0:Not Set 1:Set |
|      |             | 1 | Drawer Set                | 0:Not Set 1:Set |
|      |             | 0 | Not Used                  | -               |

| -028 | Door | 7 | Front Door Open Detect | 0:Open 1:Close |
|------|------|---|------------------------|----------------|
|      |      | 6 | Bank Door Open Detect  | 0:Open 1:Close |
|      |      | 5 | DFU                    | -              |
|      |      | 4 | Not Used               | -              |
|      |      | 3 | Not Used               | -              |
|      |      | 2 | Not Used               | -              |
|      |      | 1 | Not Used               | -              |
|      |      | 0 | Not Used               | -              |

| -029 | Used Toner Trans | 7 | Not Used                            | -               |
|------|------------------|---|-------------------------------------|-----------------|
|      |                  | 6 | Waste Toner Motor Lock              | 0:Normal 1:Lock |
|      |                  | 5 | Waste Toner Bottle Full Detect      | 0:OFF 1:ON      |
|      |                  | 4 | Waste Toner Bottle Set Detect       | 0:Set 1:Not Set |
|      |                  | 3 | Waste Toner Bottle Near Full Detect | 0:OFF 1:ON      |
|      |                  | 2 | Not Used                            | -               |
|      |                  | 1 | Not Used                            | -               |
|      |                  | 0 | Not Used                            | -               |



**PAGE: 8/8** 

Model: V-C3

Date: 24-Aug-10

| -030 | Peltier Unit | 7 | Peltier Unit Abnormal | 0:Normal 1:Abnormal |
|------|--------------|---|-----------------------|---------------------|
|      |              | 6 | Peltier Fan Lock      | 0:Normal 1:Lock     |
|      |              | 5 | Not Used              | -                   |
|      |              | 4 | Not Used              | -                   |
|      |              | 3 | Not Used              | -                   |
|      |              | 2 | Not Used              | -                   |
|      |              | 1 | Not Used              | -                   |
|      |              | 0 | Not Used              | -                   |



**PAGE: 1/1** 

Model: V-C3

Date: 30-Aug-10

No.: RD081041

| Subject: Parts Information(ARDF)                    |                 |               | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |                         |  |
|---|-----------------|---------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                 |               |                              |                         |  |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting | Part informat | tion                         | Action required         |  |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrical    |                              | Service manual revision |  |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec  | eive                         | Retrofit information    |  |
|   | Other ()        |               |                              |                         |  |

| Old part | New part | Description            | Q'ty | Int | Note |
|----------|----------|------------------------|------|-----|------|
| number   | number   |                        |      |     |      |
| D4123124 | D4123125 | DRIVEN ROLLER:SCANNING | 1-1  | X/X | X/O  |
| D4123155 | D4123156 | ROLLER:DRIVE ROLLER:   | 2-2  | X/X | as a |
|          |          | TRANSPORT BELT UNIT    |      |     | set  |

**Change:** The shapes of these parts were changed.

**Reason:** To further increase the accuracy of the transfer belt alignment.

Important: Install both new parts together as a set.

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3   |                 |               | Dat    | e: 14-Sept           | t-10   | No.: RD081042     |  |
|---|-----------------|---------------|--------|----------------------|--------|-------------------|--|
| Subject:  |                 |               |        | Prepared by: C.Tsuji |        |                   |  |
| Release of USB Prep Tool Ver.1.3                    |                 |               |        |                      |        |                   |  |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                 |               |        |                      |        |                   |  |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting | Part info     | ormat  | tion                 | Action | required          |  |
| 1   | 🗌 Mechanical    | Electric      | al     |                      | Servic | e manual revision |  |
| 1   | Paper path      | Transm        | it/rec | eive                 | Retrof | it information    |  |
| 1   | Product Safety  | igvee Other ( |        | )                    | Tier 2 |                   |  |

This RTB is the release note for the USB Prep Tool Ver.1.3 that can be used when reinstalling the system software for E-7200.

### About USB Prep Tool

**USB Prep Tool** is a utility software for service use only. This utility can be used when you reinstall the system software by using a USB memory drive.

For details of usage of this utility, please read the "Installing System Software Using a USB Drive" in the E-7200 service manual.

#### **Installation Procedure**

- 1. If a previous version of USB prep tool is already installed in your PC, uninstall it.
- 2. Extract D5027660.exe, until you get the PT folder.
- 3. Open the PT folder.
- 4. Double click on "Setup.exe" to install the application.
- 5. Check the legal notice and go through the installation.

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3   |                 |               | Dat                  | e: 14-Sept | t-10   | No.: RD081043     |
|---|-----------------|---------------|----------------------|------------|--------|-------------------|
| Subject:  |                 |               | Prepared by: C.Tsuji |            |        |                   |
| Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-16OVJ9.ps)        |                 |               |                      |            |        |                   |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                 |               |                      |            |        |                   |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting | Part info     | orma                 | tion       | Action | required          |
|   | 🗌 Mechanical    | Electric      | al                   |            | Servic | e manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transm        | it/rec               | eive       | Retrof | it information    |
|   | Product Safety  | igvee Other ( |                      | )          | Tier 2 |                   |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-160VJ9**.ps for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | Issue(s)   |
|-------------|--|
| 1-16OVJ9.ps | The engine counters for a PCL5c job are different from the counters for PS and/or PCL6 jobs. |

### Note:

This patch is pre-installed from the 1<sup>st</sup> lot of mass-production unit. Therefore this patch is needed to be installed only when system re-installation is performed.

### Prerequisite(s):

None

### Patch Update Procedure

- 1. Extract D5027551.exe until you get the 1-16OVJ9.ps file.
- 2. Download/Import the patch file "1-16OVJ9.ps" with Command Workstation to the "Direct" queue.
- 3. You must wait at least 60 seconds after the patch file downloaded/imported before rebooting the system. This will ensure the patch file is completely processed.
- 4. From either Command Workstation select Server-> Reboot Server or from the Fiery LCD select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.
- 5. Wait until the Fiery has come to idle and print out the configuration page.
- 6. Verify the Update Info section. It should contain the patch number "1-16OVJ9".

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3   |                 |           | Dat    | ie: 14-Sep           | t-10     | No.: RD081044     |  |
|---|-----------------|-----------|--------|----------------------|----------|-------------------|--|
| Subject:  |                 |           |        | Prepared by: C.Tsuji |          |                   |  |
| Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-17LVX9.ps)        |                 |           |        |                      |          |                   |  |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                 |           |        |                      |          |                   |  |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting | Part inf  | ormaʻ  | tion                 | Action   | ı required        |  |
|   | Mechanical      | Electric  | al     |                      | Servic   | e manual revision |  |
|   | Paper path      | Transm    | it/rec | eive                 | Retrof   | iit information   |  |
| 4   | Product Safety  | 🛛 Other ( |        | )                    | 🗌 Tier 2 |                   |  |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-17LVX9**.ps for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | Issue(s)   |
|-------------|--|
| 1-17LVX9.ps | <ul> <li>The E-7200 cannot receive a lot of jobs via the "Send To" option.</li> <li><i>CommandWorkStation</i> freezes in a specific print condition.</li> <li>The method of updating the address book in LCD scan does not work.</li> <li>Canceled jobs remain in the print queue.</li> <li>New Feature: Managing scan addresses from WebTools is</li> </ul> |
|             | available.   |

#### **Important Note:**

After this patch is applied, the customer can use a new feature which is to manage scan addresses from the WebTools.

Therefore, after applying this patch, provide the customer with the attached file *ReadMe\_ScanAddrBook.pdf* 

#### **Prerequisite(s):**

Before this patch is applied, the following patch should already be applied on the system :

• 1-16OVJ9.ps

#### **Patch Update Procedure**

- 1. Extract **D5027552.exe** until you get the **1-17LVX9.ps** file.
- 2. Download/Import the patch file "1-17LVX9.ps" with Command Workstation to the "Direct" queue.
- 3. You must wait at least 60 seconds after the patch file downloaded/imported before rebooting the system. This will ensure the patch file is completely processed.
- 4. From either Command Workstation select Server-> Reboot Server or from the Fiery LCD select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.
- 5. Wait until the Fiery has come to idle and print out the configuration page.
- 6. Verify the Update Info section. It should contain the patch number "1-17LVX9".
- 7. Provide the customer with the ReadMe\_ScanAddrBook.pdf.

## Technical Bulletin

Model: Model V-C3

Date: 06-Oct-10

No.: RD081045

| Subject: SIDE FENCE:FRONT:ASS'Y                     |                 |                 |      | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |  |  |
|---|-----------------|-----------------|------|------------------------------|--|--|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                 |                 |      |                              |  |  |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting | 🛛 Part informat | tion | Action required              |  |  |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrical      |      | Service manual revision      |  |  |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec    | eive | Retrofit information         |  |  |
|   | Other ()        |                 |      |                              |  |  |

| Old part | New part  | Description            | Q'ty | Int  | Note |
|----------|-----------|------------------------|------|------|------|
| number   | number    |                        |      |      |      |
| B1322861 | D0812861  | SIDE FENCE:FRONT:ASS'Y | 1-1  | X/O  | -    |
| -        | 04503008N | TAPPING SCREW - M3X8   | 0-1  | As a | -    |
|          |           |                        |      | set  |      |

**Change:** A tapping screw (M3x8) was added to the side fence front assembly.

**Reason:** To fix the assembly in place, so that it does not detach from the hook when it is slid.



# Technical Bulletin

### **PAGE: 1/1**

| Model: V-C3 Date                                   |                 |          | e: 13-Oct-10                 | No.: RD081046 |                    |
|--|-----------------|----------|------------------------------|---------------|--------------------|
| Subject:: SC 672                                   |                 |          | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |               |                    |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQM Dept |                 |          |                              |               |                    |
| Classification:                                    | Troubleshooting | Part inf | ormat                        | tion Actior   | n required         |
|  | Mechanical      | Electric | al                           | 🖂 Servio      | ce manual revision |
|  | Paper path      | Transm   | it/rec                       | eive 🗌 Retro  | fit information    |
|  | Other ()        |          |                              |               |                    |

### **Service Manual Revision**

Add the following description for SC672.

# **3. Appendix: Service Call Conditions** Pg. 117

| No. | Туре | Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)                                       |
|-----|------|---|
| 672 | CTL  | Controller-to-operation panel communication error at startup  |
|     | D    | After the machine is powered on, the communication between the controller and                       |
|     |      | the operation panel is not established, or communication with controller is                         |
|     |      | interrupted after a normal startup.   |
|     |      | <ul> <li>After startup reset of the operation panel, the attention code or the attention</li> </ul> |
|     |      | acknowledge code is not sent from the controller within 15 seconds.                                 |
|     |      | After the controller issues a command to check the communication line with the                      |
|     |      | controller at 30-second intervals, the controller fails to respond twice.                           |
|     |      | Controller stalled  |
|     |      | <ul> <li>Controller board installed incorrectly</li> </ul>  |
|     |      | Controller board defective  |
|     |      | <ul> <li>Operation panel connector loose or defective</li> </ul>                                    |
|     |      | <ul> <li>The controller is not completely shut down when you turn the main switch off.</li> </ul>   |



Model: Model V-C3

Date: 13-Oct-10

No.: RD081047

| Subject: Tray heater                                |                 |               | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |                         |  |
|---|-----------------|---------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                 |               |                              |                         |  |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting | Part informat | tion                         | Action required         |  |
|   | 🗌 Mechanical    | Electrical    |                              | Service manual revision |  |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec  | eive                         | Retrofit information    |  |
|   | Other ()        |               |                              |                         |  |

### **Service Manual Revision**

The description highlighted **in bold** was added.

1. Appendix: Specifications

Pg.31

| No. | Component                                      | Function  |
|-----|--|---|
| H1  | Lower Tray Heater                              | Keeps paper dry. Provided with machine, connection is optional. |
| H2  | Anti-condensation Heater<br>– Scanner (Option) | Prevents the formation of condensation in the scanner unit.     |

### Note:

These heaters are turned ON under the following conditions.

- The machine's main switch is turned OFF
- The machine goes into Sleep Mode
- The machine goes into Off Mode



**PAGE: 1/1** 

Model: V-C3

Date: 20-Oct-10

No.: RD081048

| Subject: Parts Information(Duplex Unit)             |                 |               | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |                         |  |
|---|-----------------|---------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                 |               |                              |                         |  |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting | Part informat | tion                         | Action required         |  |
|   | 🗌 Mechanical    | Electrical    |                              | Service manual revision |  |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec  | eive                         | Retrofit information    |  |
|   | Other ()        |               |                              |                         |  |

| Old part | New part | Description                           | Q'ty | Int         | Note |
|----------|----------|---------------------------------------|------|-------------|------|
| number   | number   |                                       |      |             |      |
| B1324620 | D0814620 | SIDE PLATE:REAR:REVERSE<br>UNIT:ASS'Y | 1-1  | X/O<br>as a | -    |
| B1324627 | D0814627 | SIDE PLATE:FRONT:REVERSE<br>UNIT      | 1-1  | set         |      |

**Change:** The shapes of these parts were changed.

**Reason:** To improve paper feed performance and minimize occurrences of Jam Code J023.

Important: Install both new parts together as a set.

## Technical Bulletin

Reissued: 30-Mar-16

Date: 15-Nov-10

No.: RD081049g

### **RTB Reissue**

Model: V-C3

The items in *bold italics* were corrected or added.

| Subject: Toner Scattering/Drop inside the machine.     |                   |               |      | arec | by: Keita Hamada        |
|--|-------------------|---------------|------|------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/P Tech Service Dept. |                   |               | -    |      |                         |
| Classification:  | ☐ Troubleshooting | Part informat | tion |      | Action required         |
|  | Mechanical        | Electrical    |      |      | Service manual revision |
|  | Paper path        | Transmit/rec  | eive |      | Retrofit information    |
|  | Product Safety    | Other (       |      | )    | 🖂 Tier 2                |

### **SYMPTOM**

The image density decreases under the following conditions:

- Low-temperature, low-humidity, and/or
- High color APV (more than 30K)

Following this, toner may scatter inside the machine and stick to the areas shown below if the user continues to use the machine.

1. Behind the front door

2. Exhaust duct

3. Paper transfer area



4. D2 D3 lever



5. Sponge seal





6. Gap between charge roller and drum

Toner builds up between roller and drum

No.: RD081049g

Reissued: 30-Mar-16

Model: V-C3

7. Development Unit



Date: 15-Nov-10





### CAUSE

When used under the following conditions, the machine supplies more toner to the development unit, which increases the concentration of toner in developer.

- Low temperature, low humidity
- High copy/print volume
- High color ratio (Color APV: More than 30K)
- Toner concentration (TC) detection error
- Note: This happens when the output of the toner density (TD) sensor is  $\pm 2\%$  or more from the actual toner concentration (normal is within  $\pm 1\%$ ).

### ACTION

1. At machine installation

- 1. Set SP3004 (Vtref) to a value of 1.6V for each color (C, M, Y) and 2.1 for Bk. Note: Increasing the value of Vtref can reduce toner dropping. However, it may cause light images.
- 2. Set SP3-002-001 to 008 to the values in the table below.

Note: This is to reduce the TC detection gap causing toner dusting.

| SP Number | Color | Set to this value:    | Value type |
|-----------|-------|-----------------------|------------|
| 3-002-001 | Bk    | Current value – 0.2   |            |
| 3-002-002 | Μ     | Current value – 0.1   | ^          |
| 3-002-003 | С     | Current value – 0.1   | A          |
| 3-002-004 | Y     | Current value – 0.1   |            |
| 3-002-005 | Bk    | Current value – 0.19* |            |
| 3-002-006 | М     | Current value – 0.09* | Р          |
| 3-002-007 | С     | Current value – 0.09* | D          |
| 3-002-008 | Y     | Current value – 0.09  |            |

Vtcnt reference table

\*Note: Normally, the same settings should be used for the same color. However, the values in group B above are changed in order to track on which machines this temporary solution has been applied.

### Technical Bulletin

Reissued: 30-Mar-16

Model: V-C3

No.: RD081049g

Example:

| SP        | Color | BEFORE<br>changing the<br>value | AFTER changing the value                       |
|-----------|-------|---------------------------------|--|
| 3-002-001 | Bk    | 8.41                            | 8.21 ← (-0.2 subtracted from<br>current value) |
| 3-002-002 | М     | 8.36                            | $8.26 \leftarrow (-0.1 \text{ subtracted})$    |
| 3-002-003 | С     | 8.22                            | 8.12   |
| 3-002-004 | Y     | 8.46                            | 8.36   |
| 3-002-005 | Bk    | 8.41                            | 8.22   |
| 3-002-006 | М     | 8.36                            | 8.27   |
| 3-002-007 | С     | 8.22                            | 8.13   |
| 3-002-008 | Y     | 8.46                            | 8.37   |

3. Set SP3-501-005 (TC adjustment for all colors) to a value of 1.

Note: This will reduce the number of times Process Control is performed.

4. Turn the main power switch OFF/ON.

Note: This will update the toner concentration as detected by the TD sensor.

- 5. Print out 100 A4-sized sheets (or 50 A3-sized sheets) using a test pattern with about 20% coverage.
  - Select the "2-dot Independent" pattern in SP2109-002-008
  - Select the affected color in SP2109-004 and print out the pattern

Note: This is to stabilize the toner concentration.

- 6. If the image density is lower than the acceptable level, set SP3004 to a value between 2.0 and 1.5 for Bk, and between 1.5 and 1.3 for magenta, cyan, and yellow.
- 7. Repeat Steps 5 and 6 until the image density is acceptable.
Reissued: 30-Mar-16

Model: V-C3

Date: 15-Nov-10

No.: RD081049g

II. At occurrence (machines already in use):

# Note: The modified Engine firmware mentioned in Step 7 below was released as Ver.1.11:6 (D0815407G).

Do the following if the symptom occurs.

1. If the machine has made 450K prints since the last time the developer was replaced, replace the developer.

IMPORTANT: To prevent toner scattering/dropping, always be sure to replace the developer at the recommended interval of 450K (see PM Tables).

Clean the following parts/areas.

#### The numbers for each area are shown in the photos on page 1.

- Paper transfer (#3)
- Sponge seal (#5)
- Development unit (#6) \*See 'important' below.
- Gap between charge roller and drum (#7)



#### **IMPORTANT:**

• Be sure to vacuum off the built-up toner from the development unit in the area outlined in red. Otherwise, toner will drop onto the ITB and image problems may occur.

Reissued: 30-Mar-16

| Model: V-C3 | Date: 15-Nov-10 | No.: RD081049g |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|
|             |                 |                |

2. Set the Vtref value in SP3004 to 1.6V for the affected toner colors (C, M, and Y) and 2.1 for Bk.

| SP3004 Vtref: Disp/Set |          | Default Value | SET TO: |
|------------------------|----------|---------------|---------|
| -005                   | Lower: K | 1.3           | 2.1     |
| -006                   | Lower: C | 1.3           | 1.6     |
| -007                   | Lower: M | 1.3           | 1.6     |
| -008                   | Lower: Y | 1.3           | 1.6     |

Note: When the Vtref value is increased, the image density may decrease. This is because the higher the Vtref value, the lower the toner density limitation value.

| Vtref (V)      | Toner density        |
|----------------|----------------------|
|                | limitation value (%) |
| 2.08           | 8.0                  |
| 1.82           | 8.5                  |
| 1.56           | 9.0                  |
| 1.30 (default) | 9.5 (default)        |

Vtref vs. toner density limitation (estimated):

3. Set SP3531 (Target amount for process control) to a value of 0.37.

| SP3531 | Max Tnr Amt:   | Default Value | SET TO: |
|--------|----------------|---------------|---------|
| -002   | Max Tnr Amt: M | 0.45          | 0.37    |
| -003   | Max Tnr Amt: C | 0.43          | 0.37    |
| -004   | Max Tnr Amt: Y | 0.45          | 0.37    |

4. Set SP3-501-005 (TC adjustment for all colors) to a value of 1.

Note: This will reduce the number of times Process Control is performed.

5. Set SP3-306 (Set toner supply coefficient) to the following values:

| SP3306 | I_Vt_Coef    | Default Value | SET TO: |
|--------|--------------|---------------|---------|
| -025   | I_Vt_Coef: K | 100           | 0       |
| -026   | I_Vt_Coef: M | 100           | 50      |
| -027   | I_Vt_Coef: C | 100           | 50      |
| -028   | I_Vt_Coef: Y | 100           | 50      |

- 6. Turn the main power switch OFF.
- Insert the SD card in the lower slot, and then turn the machine power ON. Note:
  - The firmware update will start.
  - Required firmware: Engine Ver. 1.11:6 (D0815407G)
- 8. After the firmware update has been completed, turn the main power switch OFF/ON.
- 9. Print out 20 A4-sized sheets using a C4 Color test chart (P/N: A0929503).

| Model: V-C3 | Date: 15-Nov-10 | No.: RD081049g |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|

III. Usual maintenance activities

- For machines with a color APV of 30K or more, clean the development unit every 2 or 3 service visits, i.e. approximately every <u>75K–100K</u>. This will help prevent the symptom from occurring.
- For the optimum cleaning interval (i.e. every 2 visits or every 3 visits), keep track of the customer's print volume.



Toner dropping



This amount of toner in the trough area indicates that toner dropping (scattering outside the unit) has already occurred.

Before toner dropping



This amount of toner in the trough area indicates that toner dropping (scattering outside the unit) will occur in the near future. This amount of toner can build up even when the machine is used under the target color APV and environmental conditions.



### Technical Bulletin

**PAGE: 1/1** 

Model: Model V-C3

Date: 22-Nov-10

No.: RD081050

| Subject:: P to P revision                          |                 | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |      |                                     |
|--|-----------------|------------------------------|------|-------------------------------------|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQM Dept |                 |                              |      |                                     |
| Classification:                                    | Troubleshooting | Part informat                | tion | Action required                     |
|  | 🗌 Mechanical    | Electrical                   |      | $\boxtimes$ Service manual revision |
|  | Paper path      | Transmit/rec                 | eive | Retrofit information                |
|  | Other ()        |                              |      |                                     |

### **P-to-P Revision**

The following correction was made.

| Incorrect | Correct | Name                           | Index | P to P | Page | Note |
|-----------|---------|--------------------------------|-------|--------|------|------|
| Symbol    | Symbol  |                                | No.   |        |      |      |
| M29       | M14     | Fusing Cooling Fan Motor/Front | 15    | F4     | 2/5  | -    |
| M30       | M15     | Fusing Cooling Fan Motor/Rear  | 20    | F4     | 2/5  | -    |



### Technical Bulletin

Reissued: 26-Sep-11 Model: Model V-C3

Date: 26-Nov-10

No.: RD081051

| Subject: CAM:PICKUP ROLLER:ASS'Y                    |                 | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |      |                         |
|---|-----------------|------------------------------|------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                 |                              |      |                         |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting | Part informat                | tion | Action required         |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrical                   |      | Service manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec                 | eive | Retrofit information    |
|   | Other ()        |                              |      |                         |

#### **RTB Reissue**

The items in *bold italics* were corrected or added.

Parts Change #01 was issued, but the New part (D4121682) cannot improve chattering. Also, D4121682 has not been installed on mass-production machines and not shipped to overseas SPCs yet. So we are issuing Reversed Parts Change #02 in this RTB.

#### U003. ADF Parts Change Information #01

| Old part | New part | Description                 | Q'ty | Int  | Note |
|----------|----------|-----------------------------|------|------|------|
| number   | number   |                             |      |      |      |
| A6802262 | -        | FEELER - PICK-UP ROLLER CAM | 1-0  | X/O  | -    |
| B4773251 | -        | PICK-UP ROLLER CAM          | 1-0  | As a | -    |
| AA082101 | -        | BUSHING - 6X10X6            | 5-4  | set  | -    |
| -        | D4121682 | CAM:PICKUP ROLLER:ASS'Y     | 0-1  |      | -    |

**Change:** The feeler, pick-up roller cam, and bushing were deleted as individual service parts and re-registered as a single assembly.

Reason: The feeler was bonded to the cam to prevent chattering.

#### U003. ADF

#### Parts Change Information #02

| Old part<br>number | New part<br>number | Description                 | Q'ty | Int  | Note |
|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|------|------|------|
| D4121682           | -                  | CAM:PICKUP ROLLER:ASS'Y     | 1-0  | Х/О  | -    |
|                    | A6802262           | FEELER - PICK-UP ROLLER CAM | 0-1  | As a | -    |
|                    | B4773251           | PICK-UP ROLLER CAM          | 0-1  | set  | -    |
|                    | AA082101           | BUSHING - 6X10X6            | 4-5  | 1    | -    |

Change: The feeler, pick-up roller cam, and bushing were re-registered as individual service parts.

Reason: The bonded feeler cannot improve chattering.

### Technical Bulletin

Reissued: 26-Sep-11

Model: Model V-C3 Date: 26-Nov-10 No.: RD081051

#### Modification by Parts change #01:



#### Modification by Parts change #02:



# Technical Bulletin

#### **PAGE: 1/1**

| Model: Model V-C3 Date        |                              |           | e: 22-Dec-10     | No.: RD081052 |                    |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------|------------------|---------------|--------------------|
| Subject: Printer Service Mode |                              |           | Prepared by: Tak | keshi Toriumi |                    |
| From: 1st Ovears              | eas Tech Support Sec, 1st PC | M Dept    |                  |               |                    |
| Classification:               | Troubleshooting              | Part info | ormat            | tion 🗌 Action | n required         |
|                               | Mechanical                   | Electric  | al               | 🖂 Servi       | ce manual revision |
|                               | Paper path                   | 🗌 Transm  | it/rec           | eive 🗌 Retro  | fit information    |
|                               | Other ()                     |           |                  |               |                    |

Please add the following information written in *bold italics* to Section.4 "Appendix: Service Program Mode Tables" of the D081/D082 Service Manual (pg.508).

#### Printer Service Mode

#### SP1-XXX (Service Mode)

| 1001 | Bit Switch |  |   |  |  |  |
|------|------------|--|---|--|--|--|
| 009  | Bit Switch | 9  | 0   | 1  |  |  |
|      |            | PDL Auto Detection timeout of jobs submitted via USB or Parallel Port (IEEE 1284).   | Disable<br>(Immediately)  | Enable<br>(10 seconds)   |  |  |
|      | bit 0      | To be used if PDL auto-detection fails. A failure of necessarily mean that the job cannot be printed. The whether to time-out immediately (default) upon failed  | PDL auto-detection<br>his bit switch tells t<br>ure or to wait 10 se                                    | n does not<br>he device<br>conds.  |  |  |
|      | bit 1      | DFU  | -   | -  |  |  |
|      |            | Job Cancel   | Disable<br>(Not Cancelled)  | Enable<br>(Canceled)   |  |  |
|      | bit 2      | If this bit switch, all jobs will be cancelled after a jam occurs.<br>Note: If this bitsw is enabled, printing under the following conditions might result in<br>problems:<br>- Job submission via USB or Parallel Port<br>- Spool printing (WIM >Configuration > Device Settings > System)  |   |  |  |  |
|      | bit 3      | DFU  |   |  |  |  |
|      |            | Timing of the PJL Status ReadBack (JOB<br>END) when printing multiple collated copies.   | Disabled  | Enabled  |  |  |
|      | bit 4      | This bitsw determines the timing of the PJL US<br>multiple collated copies are being printed.<br>0 (default): JOB END is sent by the device to th<br>completed printing. This causes the page count<br>first copy and then again at the end of the job.<br>1: JOB END is sent by the device to the client a<br>printing. This causes the page counter to be in<br>job. | TATUS JOB END<br>the client after the<br>inter to be increme<br>after the last copy<br>cremented at the | sent when<br>first copy has<br>nted after the<br>has finished<br>end of each |  |  |
|      | bit 5 to 7 | DFU  | -   | -  |  |  |

### Technical Bulletin

Reissued:27-May-13 Model: Model V-C3

Date: 22-Dec-10

No.: RD081053c

#### **RTB Reissue**

| The items in <i>bold italics</i> were corrected or added. |                               |               |                     |                         |  |  |  |
|---|-------------------------------|---------------|---------------------|-------------------------|--|--|--|
| Subject:: Harne   | ess behind the toner hopp     | Prepared      | by: Yuji Urushihara |                         |  |  |  |
| From: 1st Overse  | eas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PC | QM Dept       |                     |                         |  |  |  |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting               | Part informat | tion                | Action required         |  |  |  |
|   | Mechanical                    | Electrical    |                     | Service manual revision |  |  |  |
|   | Paper path                    | Transmit/rec  | eive                | Retrofit information    |  |  |  |
|   | Other ( )                     |               |                     |                         |  |  |  |

### IMPORTANT: Make sure to do the action in this RTB at the next service visit.

This issue was reported from the field in Japan, and resulted in smoke emitted from the CNB board used on a V-C2 machine.

Although a solution had already been applied to the affected machine, the harness bind (shown below) was too loose, causing the positioning pin of the drum face plate behind the toner hopper unit to strike and damage the harness.

#### Photos:



### SYMPTOM

The harness behind the toner hopper unit may be damaged, as shown in the photos below.

#### Note:

If the harness is damaged severely, a short circuit may occur and damage the PCB: CNB (D0145440).



### Technical Bulletin

**PAGE: 2/3** 

Reissued:27-May-13

Model: Model V-C3

 Date:
 22-Dec-10
 No.:
 RD081053c

Harne

rh

### CAUSE

The harness is pinched and ultimately damaged by the positioning pin shown in the photo below.



### ACTION

Do the following:

1. Remove the toner hopper unit from the machine.



2. Check the individual cables of the harness [A] for damage (See the photograph on pg. 1). For any cable that is damaged, wrap a piece of Teflon tape twice around the damaged area.

Important:

- Cover the damaged area plus 10mm on both sides.
- Use one piece of tape per individual cable. Do not bind cables together with the tape.

### Reissued:27-May-13

| Model: Model V-C3 | Date: 22-Dec-10 | No.: RD081053c |
|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|
|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|

3. Bind harnesses [B] and [C] together, as shown by clamp "[a]" below.

4. Bind harnesses [A], [B], and [C] together, as shown by clamp "[b]".

Note: The part number of the binder is D0149452 (HARNESS BAND 80MM: SET 20).



**Important:** Make sure to bind the harnesses so that they do not pass through the area shown in red. This area is centered around the black pin (yellow dotted line) in the illustration.

5. Reinstall the toner hopper unit.

| Model Code | Serial Number |  |  |  |
|------------|---------------|--|--|--|
| D081-17    | V7601000263   |  |  |  |
| D081-19    | V7601100735   |  |  |  |
| D081-27    | V7601000861   |  |  |  |
| D081-29    | V7601001116   |  |  |  |
| D082-17    | V7701000046   |  |  |  |
| D082-19    | V7701000120   |  |  |  |
| D082-21    | V7701000122   |  |  |  |
| D082-27    | V7701000138   |  |  |  |
| D082-29    | V7701000203   |  |  |  |

#### **RCL (Japan) Production**

### Technical Bulletin

Model: Model V-C3

Date: 24-Dec-10

No.: RD081054

| Subject: Precaution for PM parts replacement        |                                       |               | Prepared | by: Takeshi Toriumi  |
|---|---------------------------------------|---------------|----------|--|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                                       |               |          |  |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting Mechanical Paper path | Part informat | tion     | Action required     Service manual revision     Betrofit information |
|   | Other ()                              |               |          |  |

### Precaution for PM parts installation on the D081/D082 models

#### **Background:**

According to the service maintenance data, some PM parts that are exclusively for the D014/D015/D078/D079 models have been installed on D081/D082 models in the field.

#### **Important Notice:**

If PM parts that are exclusively for D014/D015/D078/D079 models are used on D081/D082 models, this may cause machine quality issues.

Please refer to the following table and be sure to install the correct parts (written in **bold red**) on the D081/D082 models.

| Table.1 PM parts Information for D014/D015/D078/D079 and D081/D082 models |                            |                  |  |  |  |
|---|----------------------------|------------------|--|--|--|
| Parts Description   | D014/D015/D078/D079 models | D081/D082 models |  |  |  |
| Developer Cartridge Black   | D0149640                   | D0819640         |  |  |  |
| Developer Cartridge Cyan  | D0149660                   | D0819660         |  |  |  |
| Developer Cartridge Magenta   | D0149670                   | D0819670         |  |  |  |
| Developer Cartridge Yellow  | D0149680                   | D0819680         |  |  |  |
| Hot Roller  | AE010075                   | AE010080         |  |  |  |
| Oil Supply Roller   | AE040042                   | AE040015         |  |  |  |
| Drum Charge Roller: Ass'y   | D0142441                   | D0812441         |  |  |  |
| Charge Corona: Ass'y (Note)   | D0142391                   | -                |  |  |  |
| Cushion Wire T1.5   | -                          | D0142406         |  |  |  |
| Cleaner Grid Ass'y  | -                          | D0142407         |  |  |  |
| Cleaner Corona Wire Ass'y   | -                          | D0142410         |  |  |  |
| Drum Charge Corona Wire   | -                          | D0142434         |  |  |  |
| Grid Drum Charge Wire   | -                          | D0812399         |  |  |  |

#### Note:

With regard to Charge Corona: Ass'y, an assembly part is recommended for replacement on the D014/D015/D078/D079 models. On the other hand, the component parts are recommended for replacement on the D081/D082 models.

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3                                  |                               |           | Dat    | e: 14-Jan- | ·11       | No.: RD081055     |
|--|-------------------------------|-----------|--------|------------|-----------|-------------------|
| Subject:                                     |                               |           |        | Prepare    | d by: C.T | ſsuji             |
| Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-1820IK.ps) |                               |           |        |            |           |                   |
| From: 1st Overse                             | eas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQ | M Dept.   |        |            |           |                   |
| Classification:                              | Troubleshooting               | Part info | orma   | tion       | Action    | n required        |
|  | Mechanical                    | Electric  | al     |            | Servic    | e manual revision |
|  | Paper path                    | Transm    | it/rec | eive       | Retrof    | fit information   |
|  | Product Safety                | 🛛 Other ( |        | )          | Tier 2    |                   |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-1820IK**.ps for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | Issue(s)   |  |  |
|-------------|--|--|--|
| 1-1820IK.ps | Error SC990 occurs when calibration is executed in a Dutch |  |  |
|             | language.  |  |  |

#### Prerequisite(s):

Before this patch is applied, the following patch should already be applied on the system :

- 1-16OVJ9.ps
- 1-17LVX9.ps

#### **Patch Update Procedure**

- 1. Extract **D5027553.exe** until you get the **1-182OIK.ps** file.
- 2. Make sure that the Fiery is Idle.
- 3. Import the patch file "1-1820IK.ps" using Command Workstation to the Direct queue.
- 4. You must wait until the file finishes processing and CWS or LCD show Idle. This ensures the patch file is completely processed.
- 5. From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.
- 6. Wait until the Fiery comes to Idle and print the configuration page.
- 7. Verify that the System Updates Log section contains the patch number "1-1820IK".



### Technical Bulletin

Model: Model V-C3

Date: 08-Mar-11

No.: RD081056

| Subject:: Service Manual Revision(SP 1109)         |                 |               | Prepare | d by: Takeshi Toriumi               |
|--|-----------------|---------------|---------|-------------------------------------|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQM Dept |                 |               |         |                                     |
| Classification:                                    | Troubleshooting | Part informat | tion    | Action required                     |
|  | Mechanical      | Electrical    |         | $\boxtimes$ Service manual revision |
|  | Paper path      | Transmit/rec  | eive    | Retrofit information                |
|  | Other ()        |               |         |                                     |

# Service Manual Revision D081/D082

**Delete** SP1109 (High Adhesion Mode), as this SP is not used.

### 4. Appendix: Service Program Mode Tables

pg. 176

| 1109 | High A <del>dhesion</del> Mode                 |  |
|------|--|--|
| 1    | [*0:Normal]<br>[1: H <del>igh A</del> dhesion] |  |

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3 Da                                      |                                  |               |        | e: 29-Mar- | 11        | No.: RD081057     |
|---|----------------------------------|---------------|--------|------------|-----------|-------------------|
| Subject:  |                                  |               |        | Prepared   | d by: C.T | suji              |
| Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (2011_Mar)           |                                  |               |        |            |           |                   |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                                  |               |        |            |           |                   |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting                  | Part info     | orma   | tion       | Action    | required          |
|   | Mechanical                       | Electric      | al     |            | Servic    | e manual revision |
|   | Paper path     Transmit/relation |               | it/rec | eive       | Retrof    | it information    |
|   | Product Safety                   | igvee Other ( |        | )          | Tier 2    |                   |

This RTB is the release note for set of patches (6 patches in total) for Color Controller E-7200 System version 1.0.

| Folder<br>Name | Patch File<br>Name | File Size  | Order | Installation                                  |
|----------------|--------------------|------------|-------|---|
| 1st            | 1-182O6B.ps        | 2,918,872  | 1     | After each patch has been downloaded, wait 60 |
|                | 1-18207R.ps        | 40,426     | 2     | At last repeat the controller and             |
|                | 1-182Q9W.ps        | 68,166     | 3     | At last, report the controller once.          |
|                | 1-182PXX.ps        | 26,990,573 | 4     |   |
|                | 1-182Q0D.ps        | 717,342    | 5     |   |
|                | 1-18T8RF.ps        | 2,154,620  | 6     |   |

#### Important Note:

Keep the order of patches to be applied as shown in the table above. If some of the patches were not applied or were not applied in the indicated order by mistake, then system software re-installation is required for recovery.

#### Issue(s) addressed with this release:

- Characters disappear at random, when an EPS file is printed with particular settings.
- A cyan line is not printed when printing at 600 dpi.
- Certain jobs generate PS error when processing them.
- Extra lines are printed on the table when printing a document with 2-up Layout.
- Gradation images print incorrectly with setting Composite Overprint is ON.
- Scale to Fit and Full Bleed do not always work properly in combination.

#### Prerequisite(s):

Before this patch is applied, the following patches should already be applied on the system.

- 1-16OVJ9.ps
- 1-17LVX9.ps



RICOH

Date: 29-Mar-11

No.: RD081057

#### Preparation before installation:

- 1. Extract **D5027555.exe**.
- 2. Check that 1st folder which consists of 6 patches is created. (Refer to the table on the top of this page.)

#### Patch Update Procedure:

- 1. Download/Import the patch file 1-182O6B.ps with Command Workstation to the "Direct" queue.
- 2. Wait more than 60 seconds.
- 3. Repeat steps #1 and #2 with the following patches
  - 1-18207R.ps
  - 1-182Q9W.ps
  - 1-182PXX.ps
  - 1-182Q0D.ps
  - 1-18T8RF.ps
- 4. After waiting 60 seconds after the last patch has been downloaded/imported, reboot the system. This will ensure the patch file is completely processed. From either Command Workstation or the Fiery LCD, select "Shut Down" and then "Reboot System".
- 5. Wait until the Fiery has come to idle and print out the configuration page. Verify the **Update Info** section. It should contain the following patch numbers:
  - 1-18206B.ps 1-18207R.ps 1-182Q9W.ps 1-182PXX.ps 1-182Q0D.ps 1-18T8RF.ps



### Technical Bulletin

Model: Model V-C3

Date: 26-Apr-11

No.: RD081058

| Subject:: Service Manual Revision(SC 402)          |                 |               | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |                                     |  |
|--|-----------------|---------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQM Dept |                 |               |                              |                                     |  |
| Classification:                                    | Troubleshooting | Part informat | tion                         | Action required                     |  |
|  | 🗌 Mechanical    | Electrical    |                              | $\boxtimes$ Service manual revision |  |
|  | Paper path      | Transmit/rec  | eive                         | Retrofit information                |  |
|  | Other ()        |               |                              |                                     |  |

# Service Manual Revision D081/D082

The description for SC402 was corrected as follows.

### 3. Appendix: Service Call Conditions

Service Call Tables SC Codes Group 4: Image Development - 2 Pg. 91

|       |   | ID Sensor Pattern Maximum Coverage Error 1: K  |  |  |  |  |
|-------|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| SC402 | D | The amount of toner applied to create the black ID sensor pattern between sheets (SP3101-1 ID Pattern Display - Applied: K) exceeded the maximum threshold of 0.3 mg/cm <sup>2</sup> due to an over supply of black toner. |  |  |  |  |
|       |   | <ul> <li>Yellow toner supply unit defective<br/>Black</li> </ul>   |  |  |  |  |

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3   |                         |               | Dat    | e: 28-Apr- | 11        | No.: RD081059     |
|---|-------------------------|---------------|--------|------------|-----------|-------------------|
| Subject:  |                         |               |        |            | d by: C.T | ſsuji             |
| Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-18R20T.ps)        |                         |               |        |            |           |                   |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                         |               |        |            |           |                   |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting         | Part info     | orma   | tion       | Action    | n required        |
|   | Mechanical              | Electric      | al     |            | Servic    | e manual revision |
|   | Paper path Transmit/red |               | it/rec | eive       | Retrof    | fit information   |
|   | Product Safety          | igvee Other ( |        | )          | 🗌 Tier 2  |                   |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-18R20T**.ps for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | Issue(s)   |
|-------------|--|
| 1-18R20T.ps | • Paper mismatch occurs when calibrating with paper other than Plain1 or Thick2. |

#### **Prerequisite(s):**

Before this patch is applied, the following patches should already be applied on the system :

- 1-16OVJ9.ps
- 1-17LVX9.ps

#### **Patch Update Procedure**

- 1. Extract D5027556.exe until you get the 1-18R20T.ps file.
- 2. Make sure that the Fiery is Idle.
- 3. Import the patch file "1-18R20T.ps" using Command Workstation to the Direct queue.
- 4. You must wait until the file finishes processing and CWS or LCD show Idle. This ensures the patch file is completely processed.
- 5. From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.
- 6. Wait until the Fiery comes to Idle and print the configuration page.
- 7. Verify that the System Updates Log section contains the patch number "1-18R20T".

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3   |                         |               | Dat  | e: 28-Apr- | 11                   | No.: RD081060 |
|---|-------------------------|---------------|------|------------|----------------------|---------------|
| Subject:  |                         |               |      | Prepare    | d by: C.T            | ſsuji         |
| Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-19UI8W.ps)        |                         |               |      |            |                      |               |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                         |               |      |            |                      |               |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting         | Part info     | orma | tion       | Action               | n required    |
|   | 🗌 Mechanical            | Electrical    |      |            | Service manual revis |               |
|   | Paper path Transmit/rec |               | eive | Retrof     | fit information      |               |
|   | Product Safety          | igvee Other ( |      | )          | 🗌 Tier 2             |               |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-19UI8W**.ps for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | Issue(s)  |
|-------------|---|
| 1-19UI8W.ps | PS error occurs while processing a specific file. |

#### **Prerequisite(s):**

Before this patch is applied, the following patches should already be applied on the system:

- 1-16OVJ9.ps
- 1-17LVX9.ps
- 1-18R20T.ps

#### Patch Update Procedure

- 1. Extract **D5027557.exe** until you get the **1-19UI8W.ps** file.
- 2. Make sure that the Fiery is Idle.
- 3. Import the patch file "1-19UI8W.ps" using Command Workstation to the Direct queue.
- 4. You must wait until the file finishes processing and CWS or LCD show Idle. This ensures the patch file is completely processed.
- 5. From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.
- 6. Wait until the Fiery comes to Idle and print the configuration page.
- 7. Verify that the System Updates Log section contains the patch number "1-19UI8W".

# Technical Bulletin

#### **PAGE: 1/2**

| Model: Model V-C3 Date                              |                 |              |      | e: 06-Jun-   | No.: RD081061        |                   |
|---|-----------------|--------------|------|--------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| Subject: New discharge brush                        |                 |              |      |              | d by: Tak            | eshi Toriumi      |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                 |              |      |              |                      |                   |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting | Part info    | orma | tion         | Action               | ו required        |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrical   |      | Service manu |                      | e manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec |      | eive         | Retrofit information |                   |
|   | Product Safety  | Other (      |      | )            | 🗌 Tier 2             | ì                 |

| Old part<br>number | New part<br>number | Description               | Q'ty | Int | Page | Index          |
|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|------|-----|------|----------------|
| -                  | B6522516           | DISCHARGE BRUSH:EXIT: L45 | 1    | -   | -    | Newly<br>added |

Change: A static discharge brush was added to the bracket (P/N: D4122364).

**Reason:** To further ensure that dust from the paper does not stick to the ADF exposure glass (which can cause a black line to appear on the image).





### Technical Bulletin

Model: Model V-C3

Date: 06-Jun-11

No.: RD081061



# Technical Bulletin

#### **PAGE: 1/1**

| Model: V-C3  |                 |              |      | Date: 29-Jun-11 |           | No.: RD081062     |
|--|-----------------|--------------|------|-----------------|-----------|-------------------|
| Subject: @Remote notification of supply alarm is not sent. |                 |              |      | Prepared        | d by: Tak | eshi Toriumi      |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1st PQM Dept          |                 |              |      |                 |           |                   |
| Classification:  | Troubleshooting | Part info    | orma | tion            | Action    | n required        |
|  | 🗌 Mechanical    | Electric     | al   |                 |           | e manual revision |
|  | Paper path      | Transmit/rec |      | eive            | Retro     | fit information   |
|  | Product Safety  | Other (      |      | )               | 🛛 Tier 2  |                   |

### SYMPTOM

With the main power ON, if a supply alarm that is not related to paper or the staple feature (e.g. toner, toner collection bottle, fusing unit, other) happens nine or more times, an @Remote notification is not sent to the @Remote center.

### CAUSE

Firmware bug

### ACTION

At machine installation or the next service visit, update the **System/Copy** firmware to the following version or later (if an older version is installed).

**Note:** You can check the current version using SP5990-005.

| Version | Program No. | Effective Date       | Availability of RFU                            |
|---------|-------------|----------------------|--|
| 1.04    | D0815760E   | June 2011 production | The firmware can be updated via RFU or SD card |

### Technical Bulletin

Reissued: 12-Apr-12

Model: V-C3

Date: 28-Jul-11

No.: RD081063b

#### **RTB Reissue**

| The items in <b>bo</b> | Id italics have been corr | ected.             |                         |
|------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| Subject: Firmwa        | Prepared by: H. Tamaki    |                    |                         |
| From: 1st Tech S       |                           |                    |                         |
| Classification:        | Troubleshooting           | Part information   | Action required         |
|                        | Mechanical                | Electrical         | Service manual revision |
|                        | Paper path                | Transmit/receive   | Retrofit information    |
|                        | Product Safety            | 🛛 Other (Firmware) | 🛛 Tier 2                |

This RTB has been issued to announce the firmware release information for the **Java VM v7 std for eDC**.

| Version | Program No.   | Effective Date           |
|---------|---------------|--------------------------|
| 7.17.04 | D0815792H_edc | March 2012 production    |
| 7.16.07 | D0815792G_edc | November 2011 production |
| 7.14.03 | D0815792F_edc | June 2011 production     |

| Version | Modified Points or Symptom Corrected  |  |  |  |  |
|---------|---|--|--|--|--|
| 7.17.04 | <ul> <li>Other changes:</li> <li>1. A software button was added to the Copier screen, which can be assigned to specific SDK applications.</li> <li>Note: In order to utilize this change, the SDK application itself must also support this functionality. For details, see the Release Notes for each application.</li> <li>2. Software Keyboard type was changed for Taiwan model</li> </ul>  |  |  |  |  |
| 7.16.07 | <ul> <li>*This module is for Remote Install Manager and updating JavaVM.</li> <li>Symptom corrected: <ol> <li>SDK/J starting logo screen does not change.</li> <li>Vulnerability to the re-negotiation of SSL/TLS .</li> <li>Multi installation to HDD fails for VM card Type-C applications.</li> <li>Other minor bug corrections.</li> </ol> </li> <li>Other changes: <ol> <li>Kerberos certification corresponding to RC4-HMAC code form.</li> <li>VM card Type-C application remote installation.</li> <li>Support for eDC-i1.2.</li> </ol> </li> </ul> |  |  |  |  |
| 7.14.03 | Initial release   |  |  |  |  |

### Technical Bulletin

Model: V-C3

Date: 19-Aug-11

No.: RD081065

| Subject:: ADF (PCB:MAIN CONTROL:ASS'Y)             |   |               | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |  |  |
|--|---|---------------|------------------------------|--|--|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQM Dept |   |               |                              |  |  |
| Classification:                                    | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Other ()</li> </ul> | Part informat | tion<br>eive                 | <ul> <li>Action required</li> <li>Service manual revision</li> <li>Retrofit information</li> </ul> |  |

| Old part<br>number | New part<br>number | Description            | Q'ty | Int | Page | Index |
|--------------------|--------------------|------------------------|------|-----|------|-------|
| D4125500           | D4125505           | PCB:MAIN CONTROL:ASS'Y | 1-1  | X/O | -    | -     |

**Change:** The insertion slot for CN113 is attached with the pins parallel to the PCB (see the photo below).

**Reason:** To further minimize the stress to the insertion slot when the connector is inserted.



ELIND

CN113

New Part: D4125505



#### Affected Models:

| Destination | Serial Number |
|-------------|---------------|
| D081-17     | V7610400089~  |
| D081-19     | V7610701052~  |
| D081-27     | V7610400832~  |
| D081-29     | V7610501030~  |
| D082-17     | V7710400001~  |
| D082-19     | V7710700110~  |
| D082-21     | V7710400088~  |
| D082-27     | V7710400102~  |
| D082-29     | V7710400108~  |

| <b>RICOH</b> |  |
|--------------|--|
| Model: V-C3  |  |

| T |          | <b>R</b> ulletin |  |
|---|----------|------------------|--|
|   | echnical | Duneun           |  |

Date: 19-Aug-11

No.: RD081065

### Note:

- Before the change is applied to the production line, some machines have a temporary PCB with a relay connector (see the photo and serial numbers below).
- If you replace this temporary PCB in the field, remove connector [A] of the relay harness when removing the board.



Remove connector **[A]** when replacing this PCB.

#### Machines that contain the temporary PCB with relay connector

| Destination | Serial Number           |
|-------------|-------------------------|
| D081-17     | V7610400002-V7610400088 |
| D081-27     | V7610400805-V7610400831 |
| D082-21     | V7710400079-V7710400087 |
| D082-27     | V7710400090-V7710400101 |

### Technical Bulletin

Reissued:09-Jul-12

Model: V-C3

Date: 30-Aug-11

No.: RD081066a

#### **RTB Reissue**

| The items in <i>bold italics</i> were corrected or added. |  |
|---|--|
|---|--|

| Subject:: Toner Empty / Almost Empty Message       |                   |               | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |                         |  |
|--|-------------------|---------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec, 1 st PQM Dept |                   |               |                              |                         |  |
| Classification:                                    | ☐ Troubleshooting | Part informat | tion                         | Action required         |  |
|  | 🗌 Mechanical      | Electrical    |                              | Service manual revision |  |
|  | Paper path        | Transmit/rec  | eive                         | Retrofit information    |  |
|  | Product Safety    | 🗌 Other (     | )                            | ⊠ Tier2                 |  |

### SYMPTOM

The toner end ("C/M/Y/K toner is empty") or Toner near-end ("C/M/Y/K toner is almost empty") message is displayed even when there is still a large amount of toner in the cartridge.

### CAUSE

- 1. Developer Filling (SP3814) or Developer Setup (SP3811) was not completed correctly, or
- 2. The toner has clumped together and cannot be supplied out of the cartridge.

### ACTION

If the symptom occurs, do the procedure on the next page.

### Technical Bulletin

Reissued:09-Jul-12





# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3   |  |           | Date: 28-Sept-11     |                       |                 | No.: RD081067       |  |
|---|--|-----------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|---------------------|--|
| Subject:  |  |           | Prepared by: C.Tsuji |                       |                 |                     |  |
| Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-19VLOD.ps)        |  |           |                      |                       |                 |                     |  |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |  |           |                      |                       |                 |                     |  |
| Classification:                                     | Classification: Troubleshooting Part informa |           | orma                 | ation Action required |                 |                     |  |
|   | Mechanical     Electrical                    |           | al                   | Servio                |                 | ice manual revision |  |
| Paper path     Transmit/re                          |  | it/rec    | eive                 | Retrof                | fit information |                     |  |
|   | Product Safety                               | 🛛 Other ( |                      | )                     | 🗌 Tier 2        |                     |  |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-19 VLOD**.ps for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File   | Issue(s)   |
|--------------|--|
| 1-19 VLOD.ps | Job List is not displayed in chronological order on the panel. |

#### **Prerequisite(s):**

Before this patch is applied, the following patch should already be applied on the system :

- 1-16OVJ9.ps
- 1-17LVX9.ps
- 1-18R20T.ps

#### **Patch Update Procedure**

- 1. Extract the **D5027558.exe** until you get the **1-19 VLOD.ps** file.
- 2. Make sure that the Fiery is Idle.
- 3. Import the patch file "1-19 VLOD.ps" using Command Workstation to the Direct queue.
- 4. You must wait until the file finishes processing and CWS or LCD show Idle. This ensures the patch file is completely processed.
- 5. From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.
- 6. Wait until the Fiery comes to Idle and print the configuration page.
- 7. Verify that the System Updates Log section contains the patch number "1-19 VLOD".

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3   |                 |           | Date: 28-Sept-11     |      | t-11     | No.: RD081068     |
|---|-----------------|-----------|----------------------|------|----------|-------------------|
| Subject:  |                 |           | Prepared by: C.Tsuji |      |          |                   |
| Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-1AEXIP.ps)        |                 |           |                      |      |          |                   |
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                 |           |                      |      |          |                   |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting | Part info | orma                 | tion | Action   | required          |
|   | Mechanical      | Electric  | al                   |      | Servic   | e manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transm    | it/rec               | eive | Retrof   | it information    |
|   | Product Safety  | 🛛 Other ( |                      | )    | 🗌 Tier 2 |                   |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-1AEXIP**.ps for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | Issue(s)   |
|-------------|--|
| 1-1AEXIP.ps | Patch to fix issue observed after installing 1-18207R.ps |

#### **Prerequisite(s):**

Before this patch is applied, the following patch should already be applied on the system :

- 1-16OVJ9.ps
- 1-17LVX9.ps
- 1-182O6B.ps

Do **<u>NOT</u>** install any of the following patches after installing the 1-1AEXIP.ps patch. If you must install any of the following patches, do so before installing the 1-1AEXIP.ps patch:

• 1-18207R.ps

#### Patch Update Procedure

- 1. Extract the **D5027559.exe** until you get the **1-1AEXIP.ps** file.
- 2. Make sure that the Fiery is Idle.
- 3. Import the patch file "1-1AEXIP.ps" using Command Workstation to the Direct queue.
- 4. You must wait until the file finishes processing and CWS or LCD show Idle. This ensures the patch file is completely processed.
- 5. From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.
- 6. Wait until the Fiery comes to Idle and print the configuration page.
- 7. Verify that the System Updates Log section contains the patch number "1-1AEXIP".

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: Model V-C3   |                 |                | Dat    | Date: 14-Oct-11 |           | No.: RD081069      |
|---|-----------------|----------------|--------|-----------------|-----------|--------------------|
| Subject: Important information for SP3801(Init TD Sensor) |                 |                |        |                 | d by: Tak | eshi Toriumi       |
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/P Tech Service Dept.    |                 |                |        |                 |           |                    |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting | 🗌 Part informa |        | tion            | Action    | n required         |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrical     |        |                 | Servic    | ce manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transm         | it/rec | eive            | Retro     | fit information    |
|   | Product Safety  | Other (        |        | )               | Tier 2    |                    |

# Please be sure to note the following points when SP3801 (Init TD Sensor) is done when replacing developers with new ones.

#### Important information #01

When a **single color** developer is replaced with a new one, be sure to execute SP3801 for the specifically replaced color. (NOT SP3801-001(All colors)/002(Color) BUT **SP3801-003(K)**, **004(M)**, **005(C)**, **or 006(Y)**)

#### Important information #02

When replacing **more than one single color** developer, be sure to execute both SP3814-003/004/005/006 (Execute Developer Fill) and SP3801-003/004/005/006 together as a set for each color.

#### Reason:

In executing SP3801-001/002/003/004/005/006, the machine always adjusts toner density for all colors at the end. Therefore toner density adjustment for other new developers for which SP3801 hasn't been done will be affected.

OK Case Example: When developers for Cyan and Magenta are replaced.

- 1. Execute SP3814 for only Cyan, and then do SP3801 for Cyan.
- 2. Execute SP3814 for only Magenta, and then do SP3801 for Magenta.

NG Case Example: When developers for Cyan and Magenta are replaced.

- 1. Execute SP3814 for Cyan.
- 2. Execute SP3814 for Magenta.
- 3. Execute SP3801 for Cyan.
- 4. Execute SP3801 for Magenta.

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: Model V-C3   |                 |              | Date: 14-Oct-11 |      | 11                | No.: RD081070     |
|---|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Subject: Important information for SP3811(DevSetup Execute) |                 |              |                 |      | d by: Tak         | eshi Toriumi      |
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/P Tech Service Dept.      |                 |              |                 |      |                   |                   |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting | Part informa |                 | tion | n Action required |                   |
|   | 🗌 Mechanical    | Electrical   |                 |      | Servic            | e manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transm       | it/rec          | eive | Retro             | fit information   |
|   | Product Safety  | Other (      |                 | )    | Tier 2            |                   |

# Please be sure to note the following points when SP3811 (DevSetup Execute) is done when replacing PCUs with new ones.

#### Important information #01

When a **single color** PCU is replaced with a new one, be sure to execute SP3811 for the specifically replaced color. (NOT SP3811-001(All colors)/002(Color) BUT **SP3811-003(K)**, **004(M)**, **005(C)**, or **006(Y)**)

#### Important information #02

When replacing **more than one single color** PCU, be sure to execute both SP3814-003/004/005/006 (Execute Developer Fill) and SP3811-003/004/005/006 together as a set for each color.

#### Reason:

In executing SP3811-001/002/003/004/005/006, the machine always adjusts toner density for all colors at the end. Therefore toner density adjustment for other new PCUs for which SP3811 hasn't been done will be affected.

OK Case Example: When PCUs for Cyan and Magenta are replaced.

- 1. Execute SP3814 for only Cyan, and then do SP3811 for Cyan.
- 2. Execute SP3814 for only Magenta, and then do SP3811 for Magenta.

NG Case Example: When PCUs for Cyan and Magenta are replaced.

- 1. Execute SP3814 for Cyan.
- 2. Execute SP3814 for Magenta.
- 3. Execute SP3811 for Cyan.
- 4. Execute SP3811 for Magenta.

| I echnical Bu | ulletin |
|---------------|---------|
|---------------|---------|

RICOH

Date: 20-Oct-11

No.: RD081064

| Subject: CC-CERTIFIED IN SEPTEMBER 2011 Machine     |                 |               | Prepared by: K. Hamada |                         |
|---|-----------------|---------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Overseas Tech Support Sec., 1st PQM Dept. |                 |               |                        |                         |
| Classification:                                     | Troubleshooting | Part informat | tion                   | Action required         |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrical    |                        | Service manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transmit/rec  | eive                   | Retrofit information    |
|   | Product Safety  | 🗌 Other (     | )                      | Tier 2                  |

Important Information on Installing the V-C3 as a CC-CERTIFIED Machine compliant with IEEE Std. 2600.1  $^{\rm TM}\text{-}2009$ 

Do the following **seven steps** if you want to install the V-C3 as a **CC-CERTIFIED MACHINE compliant with IEEE Std. 2600.1** <sup>™</sup>-2009.

**Note:** Machines in production are CC-certified beginning in September 2011. **Important:** If the customer requests maintenance on the machine, please perform the maintenance without accessing SP mode.

- Make sure the customer has received the English language Operating Instructions (O/I) shown in the page 15 18.
   Important: For installations in the EU market, make sure this is the Ricoh-genuine O/I.
- 2. Tell the customer to read the "Notes for Administrators: Using this Machine in a Network Environment Compliant with IEEE Std. 2600.1 <sup>™</sup>-2009".

See the following pages for Steps 3 thru 7.

Date: 20-Oct-11

No.: RD081064

3. Install the HDD Encryption Unit Type A.

### Installation Procedure for HDD Encryption Unit Type A

- 3.1 Make sure that the following settings are not at the factory default settings:
  - Supervisor login password
  - Administrator login name
  - Administrator login password

#### Important

These settings must be set up by the customer before the encryption option can be installed.

3.2 Confirm that "Admin. Authentication" is on:

[User Tools] > "System Settings" > "Administrator Tools" > "Administrator Authentication Management" > "Admin. Authentication" > "On"

If this setting is "Off" tell the customer that this setting must be "On" before you can do the installation procedure.

3.3 Confirm that "Administrator Tools" is selected and enabled:

[User Tools] > "System Settings" > "Administrator Tools" > "Administrator Authentication Management" > "Available settings"

#### Note

• "Available Settings" is not displayed until "Admin. Authentication" is switch on. If this setting is not selected tell the customer that this setting must be selected before you can do the installation procedure.



#### Caution

You must check the box seals to make sure that they were not removed after the items were sealed in the box at the factory before you do the installation.

3.4 Check the box seals[A] on each corner of the box.

- Make sure that a tape is attached to each corner.

- The surfaces of the tapes must be blank. If you see "VOID" on the tape, do not install the components in the box.

3.5 If the surfaces of the tape do not show "VOID", remove them from the corners of

Date: 20-Oct-11

No.: RD081064

the box.

3.6 You can see the "VOID" marks[B] when you remove each seal. In this conditions, they cannot be attached to the box again.



- 3.7 Remove the slot cover [A]
- 3.8 Insert the SD card [B] into the upper slot.
- 3.9 Turn on the main power switch.
- 3.10 Enter the SP mode
- 3.11 Select SP5878-002(Option Setup> Encryption Option), and then touch [Excute].
- 3.12 Turn off the main power switch.
- 3.13 Remove the SD card.
- 3.14 Attach the slot cover.
- 3.15 Switch the machine on.

#### Important

Tell the customer that it takes about 6 hours 30 minutes to perform the HDD encryption function.

### **Enabling the Encryption Settings**

Use the following procedure to enable the encryption settings at initial set up, or after encryption settings have been canceled and settings must be made again. **Important** 

- The encryption key is required for data recovery if the machine malfunctions. Be sure to store the encryption key safely for retrieving backup data.
- Encryption begins after you have complete the control panel procedure and rebooted the machine using the [Stand by] – [On] function. If there is unencrypted data on the hard disk that must be both transferred and encrypted, rebooting will take about three and a half hours. If there is encrypted data on the hard disk that must be re-encrypted, rebooting will also take about three and a half hours. If both the erase-by-overwrite function and the encryption function are specified, encryption begins after the data that is stored on the hard disk has been overwritten and the

| Technical E | Bulleti |
|-------------|---------|
|-------------|---------|

| Model: V-C3 | Date: 20-Oct-11 | No.: RD081064 |
|-------------|-----------------|---------------|
|-------------|-----------------|---------------|

machine has been rebooted using the [Stand by] – [On] procedure.

 If you want to specify encryption of unencrypted data with erase-byoverwrite, select [Random Numbers] as the overwrite method, and set the number of overwrites to "3". The entire process will take about five and a half hours. If you specify re-encryption of encrypted data, the entire process will also take bout five and a half hours.

n

- Rebooting will be faster if there is no data to carry over to the hard disk and if encryption is set to [Format All Data], even if all the data on the hard disk is formatted. Before you perform encryption, we recommend you back up important data such as the Address Book and all data stored in the Document Server.
- If the encryption key update was not completed, the printed encryption key will not be valid.
- 3.16 Press the [User Tools/Counter] key
- 3.17 Press [System settings]
- 3.18 Press [Administrator Tools].
- 3.19 Press [Machine Data Encryption Settings]. If the setting to be specified does not appear, press [next].
- 3.20 Press [Encrypt].

RICOH

| Machine Data Encryption Settings                  |  |
|---|--|
| The current data in the machine is not encrypted. |  |
| Encrypt   |  |

3.17 Select the data to be carried over to the hard disk and not be reset. To carry all of the data over to the hard disk, select [All Data]. To carry over only the machine settings data, select [File System Data Only]. To reset all of the data, select [Format All Data]

| Machine Data Encryption Setting     | gs: Carry Over / Forniat    | C              |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------|
| Cany over all data or file<br>data. | e system data only (without | : formatting), |
| All Data                            | File System Data Only       | Format A       |
|                                     |                             |                |
|                                     |                             |                |
|                                     |                             |                |



Date: 20-Oct-11

No.: RD081064

3.18 Press the [Start] key.

The encryption key for backup data is printed.



- 3.19 Press [OK].
- 3.20 Press [Exit].
- 3.21 Press [Exit].
- 3.22 Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 3.23 Turn off the power and the main power switch, and then turn the main power switch back on.
- 3.24 Give the printed encryption key to the customer.

| [ochnical | Rullatin |
|-----------|----------|
| echnical  | Dulletin |

RICOH

Date: 20-Oct-11

No.: RD081064

#### 4 Install the Data Overwrite Security Unit

### Installation Procedure for Data Overwrite Security Unit Type H

#### Before you begin

- 4.1 Confirm that the Data Overwrite Security unit SD card is the correct type for the machine. The correct type for this machine is "Type H"
- 4.2 Make sure that the following settings are not at the factory default settings:
  - Supervisor login password
  - Administrator login name
  - Administrator login password

These settings must be set up by the customer before the DOS option can be installed.

4.3 Confirm that "Admin. Authentication" is on:

[User Tools]> "System Settings">"Administrator Tools">"Administrator Authentication Management">"Admin. Authentication">"On" If this setting is "Off" tell the customer that this setting must be "On" before you can do the installation procedure.

4.4 Confirm that "Administrator Tools" is selected and enabled:

[User Tools]> "System Settings">"Administrator Tools">"Administrator Authentication Management">"Available Settings"

If this setting is not selected tell the customer that this setting must be selected before you can do the installation procedure.

Note

• "Available settings" is not displayed until Step 4.2 has been done.

#### Seal Check and removal



- 4.5 Check the box seals [1] on each corner of the box.
  - Make sure that a tape is attached to the each corner.
  - The surface of the tapes must be blank. If you see "VOID" on the tapes, do not install the components in the box.
- 4.6 If the surfaces of the tapes do not show "VOID", remove them from the corners of the box.
| RICOH       | Technical       | Bulletin        | PAGE: <b>7</b> /18 |
|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| Model: V-C3 |                 | Date: 20-Oct-11 | No.: RD081064      |
| NOR COMP.   | (2)<br>(3621902 |                 |                    |

4.7 When you remove each seal, the "VOID" marks [2] can be seen. In this condition, they cannot be reattached to the box.

#### **DOS Installation**

Before doing the procedure, turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine from its power source.

- 4.8 Make sure that the machine is switched off and disconnected from its power source.
- 4.9 Disconnect the network cable.
- 4.10Turn the main power switch on.
- 4.11Turn the operation switch and main power switch off.



4.12 Remove the SD card slot cover [A]

4.13 Remove the security tape from the SD card wrapping.

### Important

- If you see "VOID" on the security tape this means that the tape has been removed.
- If the "VOID" notations are visible, do not use the SD card for this installation. Contact your sales division.
- 4.14 Insert the DOS SD card [B] in the upper slot.
- 4.14 Reconnect the network cable.
- 4.15 Turn the main power switch on.
- 4.16 Do SP5878-1 and push [EXECUTE] to enable the DOS option.
- 4.17 Go out of the SP mode.



PAGE: 8/18

| Model: V- | -C3 |
|-----------|-----|
|-----------|-----|

Date: 20-Oct-11

No.: RD081064

- 4.18 Cycle the machine off/on.
- 4.19 Do SP5990-5 to print the Self Diagnosis Test.
- 4.19 Make sure the ROM number and firmware version in area[a] of the diagnostic report are the same as those in area [b].
  - [a]: "ROM Number/Firmware Version"- "HDD Format Option"
  - [b]: "Loading Program"- "GW5a\_zoffym"

| Diagnostic Report:    | "ROM No./Firmware<br>Version" [a] | "Loading Program" [b] |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| DataOverwriteSecurity | HDD Format Option:                | GW5a_zoffym:          |
| Unit                  | D3775902A/1.01x                   | D3775902A/1.01x       |

4.20 Turn "Auto Erase Memory Seting" on:

[User Tools] > "System Settings"> "Administrator Tools"> "Auto Erase Memory Setting"> "On".

4.21 Exit from User Tools mode.



- 4.22 Check the display and make sure that the overwrite erase icon [A] is displayed.
- 4.23 Make a Sample copy
- 4.24 Check the overwrite erase icon.
  - The icon [B] changes to [C] when job data is stored in the hard disk.
  - The icon goes back to its usual shape [B] after this function has completed a data overwrite operation to the hard disk.

## **Technical Bulletin**

Model: V-C3

Date: 20-Oct-11

No.: RD081064

5 Install the FAX Option Type C7501.

### Installation Procedure for FAX Option Type C7501

### Important;

Before installing this fax unit;

- Print out all data in the printer buffer.
- Turn off the main power switch and disconnect the power cord and network cable.



| RICOH       | Technical Bulletin |                 | PAGE: <b>10</b> /18 |
|-------------|--------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| Model: V-C3 |                    | Date: 20-Oct-11 | No.: RD081064       |
|             |                    |                 |                     |

- 5.3 Attach the speaker[A]
- 5.4 Use the tip of a small screwdriver to break out plastic covers [B] of the "TEL" and "LINE1" jacks.

L



- 5.5 Attach the FCU [A] to the controller box.
- 5.6 Attach the interface board [B] to the FCU and controller box.
- 5.7 Delete the MBU battery jumper [C] and reattach it at the "ON" position. **Note**

If the MBU jumper is not set to ON, this can cause SC819 or SC820 when the main power switch is turned on. Also, when the main power switch is turned off, fax memory will be cleared.

- 5.8 Press down on the MBU to confirm that it is seated correctly.
- 5.9 Connect the speaker harness [D] to the FCU.
- 5.10 Check the FCU connection and confirm that it is secure.

| RICOH       | Technical Bulletin |                 | PAGE: <b>11</b> /18 |  |
|-------------|--------------------|-----------------|---------------------|--|
| Model: V-C3 |                    | Date: 20-Oct-11 | No.: RD081064       |  |
|             | 6356i106           |                 |                     |  |

- 5.11 Reattach:
- Controller box[A]
- Rear lower cover
- Rear upper cover

5.12 Connect the telephone cable to the "LINE 1" jack.



5.13 Attach the ferrite core to the telephone cable.

Note

- The end of the ferrite core must be about 5cm(2.1") from the end of the cable.



| Technical | Bulletin |
|-----------|----------|
|-----------|----------|

Model: V-C3

RICOH

Date: 20-Oct-11 No.

No.: RD081064

5.14 Replace the key slot cover [A] (fourth from the bottom) with the fax key [B]



5.15 Write down the serial number of the fax unit to the serial number decal. 5.16 Attach:

- Super G3 decal[A]

- Serial number decal, under the machine serial number decal

5.17 Attach the FCC decal on the rear cover of the copier(NA only).

5.18 Confirm that the machine is grounded correctly at the power source.

5.19 Switch on the machine and confirm that it is operating correct.

5.20 Confirm that the date and time settings (User Tools) are correct.

5.21 Keep the EMC address decal at the customer site (EU only).

| RICOH       | Technical B | Technical Bulletin |               |
|-------------|-------------|--------------------|---------------|
| Model: V-C3 |             | Date: 20-Oct-11    | No.: RD081064 |

6. Make sure that App2Me is NOT installed.

If the App2Me is installed, that machine will NOT be a CC-certified machine. In this case, turn off the machine main power, remove the VM card containing App2Me from slot 2, and then give the VM card to the customer.

- 7. Make sure the machine contains the correct firmware.
  - If the customer wants to install the machine in the **same condition** as when CC Certification was first attained (same as the September 2011 machines), install **the exact versions** shown in the table below.
  - If the customer wants to install the machine as an equivalent of the September 2011 machines, install the versions shown in the table below **or later**.

If you are not sure which one the customer is requesting, **contact your sales** department.

# Firmware versions with which the V-C3 first achieved CC-CERTIFICATION: (September 2011)

| Firmware Name:  | Version: | Firmware Number: |
|-----------------|----------|------------------|
| System/Copy     | 1.03     | D0815760D        |
| Network Support | 9.62     | D0815767F        |
| Scanner         | 01.05    | D0815787D        |
| Printer         | 1.03     | D0815789C        |
| Fax             | 02.00.00 | D0815773B        |
| RemoteFax       | 02.00.00 | D0815774B        |
| Web Support     | 1.04     | D0815775E        |
| Web Uapl        | 1.01     | D0815776B        |
| NetworkDocBox   | 1.01     | D0815772A        |
| animation       | 1.00     | D0815777A        |
| PCL             | 1.08     | D0815783D        |
| OptionPCLFont   | 1.02     | D0255589         |
| Engine          | 1.07:06  | D0815407C        |
| OpePanel        | 1.04     | D0815453C (NA)   |
|                 |          | D0815454C (EU)   |
|                 |          | D0815455C (AA)   |
| LANG0           | 1.03     | D0815451A        |
| LANG1           | 1.03     | D0815451A        |
| Data Erase Opt  | 1.01x    | D3775902A        |
| GWFCU3-18(WW)   | 02.00.00 | D4985570B        |



Model: V-C3

Date: 20-Oct-11

No.: RD081064

Ic Key and Ic Ctlr versions with which the V-C3 first achieved CC-CERTIFICATION: (September 2011)

| Hardware: | Version: |
|-----------|----------|
| lc Key    | 01020700 |
|           |          |
| Ic Ctlr   | 03       |
|           |          |

| Model: V-C3       |  | Date: 20-Oct-11                                      | No.: RD081064   |
|-------------------|--|--|-----------------|
| The list of Opera | ting Instructions (O/I)  |  |                 |
| <for na=""></for> |  |  |                 |
| Paper Document    | S  |  |                 |
| • D081-7606       | C9065/C9076  |  |                 |
|                   | MP C6501SP/C7501SP   |  |                 |
|                   | LD365C/LD375C  |  |                 |
|                   | Aficio MP C6501SP/C7501SP  |  |                 |
|                   | Operating Instructions   |  |                 |
|                   | About This Machine   |  |                 |
| • D081-7633       | C9065/C9075  |  |                 |
|                   | MP C6501SP/C7501SP   |  |                 |
|                   | LD365C/LD375C  |  |                 |
|                   | Aficio MP C6501SP/C7501SP  |  |                 |
|                   | Operating Instructions   |  |                 |
|                   | Troubleshooting  |  |                 |
| • D081-7623       | C9065/C9075  |  |                 |
|                   | MP C6501SP/C7501SP   |  |                 |
|                   | LD365C/LD375C  |  |                 |
|                   | Aficio MP C6501SP/C7501SP  |  |                 |
|                   | Operating Instructions   |  |                 |
|                   | Copy and Document Sever Re                                       | ference  |                 |
| • D081-7628       | Quick Reference Copy Guide                                       |  |                 |
| ・D498-8507        | Quick Reference Fax Guide  |  |                 |
| • D081-7655       | Quick Reference Printer Guide                                    | •  |                 |
| • D081-7665       | Quick Reference Scanner Guid                                     | de   |                 |
| • D085-7905B      | App2Me Start Guide   |  |                 |
| • D029-7903       | To Users of This Machine   |  |                 |
| • D377-7250       | Notes for Users  |  |                 |
| • D060-7782       | Notes for Users  |  |                 |
| • D081-7689       | Operating Instructions Notes o                                   | n Security Function                                  | ns              |
| • D081-7688       | Notes for Administrators: Using<br>Environment Compliant with IE | g this Machine in a<br>EE Std. 2600.1 <sup>™</sup> - | Network<br>2009 |

| RICOH        | Technical Bulletin          |                  | PAGE: <b>16</b> /18 |  |
|--------------|-----------------------------|------------------|---------------------|--|
| Model: V-C3  |                             | Date: 20-Oct-11  | No.: RD081064       |  |
| CD-ROMs      |                             |                  |                     |  |
| • D081-7714  | Manuals for Users           |                  |                     |  |
|              | C9065/C9075                 |                  |                     |  |
|              | MP C6501SP/MP C7501SP       |                  |                     |  |
|              | LD365C/LD375C               |                  |                     |  |
|              | Aficio MP C6501SP/MP C750   | 1SP              |                     |  |
| • D081-7716  | Manuals for Administrators  |                  |                     |  |
|              | C9065/C9075                 |                  |                     |  |
|              | MP C6501SP/MP C7501SP       |                  |                     |  |
|              | LD365C/LD375C               |                  |                     |  |
|              | Aficio MP C6501SP/MP C750   | 1SP              |                     |  |
| • D377-7900A | Manuals DataOverwriteSecuri | ty Unit Type H/I |                     |  |

### <For EU>

### Paper Documents

| • D081-7627  | Quick Reference Copy Guide   |
|--------------|--|
| • D498-8506  | Quick Reference Fax Guide  |
| • D081-7654  | Quick Reference Printer Guide  |
| • D081-7664  | Quick Reference Scanner Guide  |
| • D081-7602  | Manuals for This Machine   |
| • D081-7600  | Safety Information for Aficio MP C6501SP/Aficio MP C7501SP   |
| or           |  |
| D081-7601    | Safety Information for MP C6501SP/MP C7501SP   |
| • D085-7904B | App2Me Start Guide   |
| • D029-7903  | To Users of This Machine   |
| • D377-7250  | Notes for users  |
| • D060-7782  | Notes for Users  |
| • D081-7687  | Operating Instructions Notes on Security Functions   |
| • D081-7686  | Notes for Administrators: Using this Machine in a Network Environment Compliant with IEEE Std. 2600.1 <sup>™</sup> -2009 |

| RICOH               | Technical Bulletin            |                  | PAGE: <b>17</b> /18 |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Model: V-C3         |                               | Date: 20-Oct-11  | No.: RD081064       |
| CD-ROMs             |                               |                  |                     |
| • D081-7718         | Manuals for Users             |                  |                     |
|                     | MP C6501SP/MP C7501SP         |                  |                     |
|                     | Aficio MP C6501SP/MP C750     | 1SP              |                     |
|                     | Α                             |                  |                     |
| • D081-7722         | Manuals for Administrators    |                  |                     |
|                     | Security Reference            |                  |                     |
|                     | MP C6501SP/MP C7501SP         |                  |                     |
|                     | Aficio MP C6501SP/MP C750     | ISP              |                     |
| • D377-7900A        | Manuals DataOverwriteSecurit  | ty Unit Type H/I |                     |
| <for asia=""></for> |                               |                  |                     |
| Paper Documen       | ts                            |                  |                     |
| • D081-7608         | MP C6501SP/C7501SP            |                  |                     |
|                     | MP C6501SP/C7501SP            |                  |                     |
|                     | Aficio MP C6501SP/C7501SP     |                  |                     |
|                     | Operating Instructions        |                  |                     |
|                     | About This Machine            |                  |                     |
| • D081-7635         | MP C6501SP/C7501SP            |                  |                     |
|                     | MP C6501SP/C7501SP            |                  |                     |
|                     | Aficio MP C6501SP/C7501SP     |                  |                     |
|                     | Operating Instructions        |                  |                     |
|                     | Troubleshooting               |                  |                     |
| • D081-7625         | MP C6501SP/C7501SP            |                  |                     |
|                     | MP C6501SP/C7501SP            |                  |                     |
|                     | Aficio MP C6501SP/C7501SP     |                  |                     |
|                     | Operating Instructions        |                  |                     |
|                     | Copy and Document Sever Re    | ference          |                     |
| • D081-7629         | Quick Reference Copy Guide    |                  |                     |
| • D498-8508         | Quick Reference Fax Guide     |                  |                     |
| • D081-7655         | Quick Reference Printer Guide | )                |                     |
| • D081-7666         | Quick Reference Scanner Gui   | de               |                     |
| • D085-7905B        | App2Me Start Guide            |                  |                     |

| RICOH        | Technical B   | ulletin  | PAGE: <b>18</b> /18 |  |  |
|--------------|---|--|---------------------|--|--|
| Model: V-C3  |   | Date: 20-Oct-11  | No.: RD081064       |  |  |
| • D029-7903  | To Users of This Machine  |  |                     |  |  |
| • D060-7782  | Notes for Users   |  |                     |  |  |
| • D081-7615  | Notes for Users   |  |                     |  |  |
| • D377-7250  | Notes for Users   |  |                     |  |  |
| • D081-7689  | Operating Instructions Notes on Security Functions              |  |                     |  |  |
| • D081-7688  | Notes for Administrators: Usin<br>Environment Compliant with IE | g this Machine in a Ne<br>EEE Std. 2600.1 <sup>™</sup> -20 | etwork<br>09        |  |  |
| CD-ROMs      |   |  |                     |  |  |
| • D081-7726  | Manuals for Users   |  |                     |  |  |
|              | MP C6501SP/MP C7501SP   |  |                     |  |  |
|              | Aficio MP C6501SP/MP C750                                       | 1SP  |                     |  |  |
| • D081-7728  | Manuals for Administrators                                      |  |                     |  |  |
|              | MP C6501SP/MP C7501SP   |  |                     |  |  |
|              | Aficio MP C6501SP/MP C750                                       | 1SP  |                     |  |  |
| • D377-7900A | Manuals DataOverwriteSecuri                                     | ty Unit Type H/I   |                     |  |  |

# Technical Bulletin

#### **PAGE: 1/2**

| Model: Model V-C3                           |                                  |            | Dat      | :e: 22-Nov | -11          | No.: RD081071     |
|---|----------------------------------|------------|----------|------------|--------------|-------------------|
| Subject: Blue Angel Mark Engineering Change |                                  |            | Prepared | d by: Tak  | eshi Toriumi |                   |
| From: 1st Tech S                            | ervice Sect., MFP/P Tech Service | vice Dept. |          |            |              |                   |
| Classification:                             | Troubleshooting                  | Part info  | orma     | tion       | Action       | required          |
|   | Mechanical                       | Electric   | al       |            | Servic       | e manual revision |
|   | Paper path                       | Transm     | it/rec   | eive       | Retrof       | it information    |
|   | Product Safety                   | Other (    |          | )          | Tier 2       |                   |

### **U001 EXTERIOR**

| Old part | New part | Description               | Q'ty | Int | Page | Index | Note |
|----------|----------|---------------------------|------|-----|------|-------|------|
| number   | number   |                           |      |     |      |       |      |
| -        | D0146993 | SHEET:REAR:DUCT:MAIN:REAR | 0-1  | -   | -    | -     | -    |
| -        | D0146994 | SHEET:RIGHT               | 0-1  | -   | -    | -     | -    |
|          |          | UPPER:DUCT:MAIN:REAR      |      |     |      |       |      |
| -        | D0146995 | SHEET:RIGHT               | 0-1  | -   | -    | -     | -    |
|          |          | LOWER:DUCT:MAIN:REAR      |      |     |      |       |      |
| -        | D0146996 | SHEET:LEFT:DUCT:MAIN:REAR | 0-1  | -   | -    | -     | -    |

- **Change:** Ozone absorption sheets were added inside the main rear duct (P/N: D0146977), as shown below.
- **Reason:** To further reduce ozone emission levels and achieve **Blue Angel Mark** certification.





Model: Model V-C3

Date: 22-Nov-11

No.: RD081071

## **Cut-in Serial Numbers**

Machines in production are Blue Angel Mark certified from the following serial numbers.

| Region | CODE    | SERIAL NUMBER |
|--------|---------|---------------|
| RAC    | D081-17 | V7610800574   |
| RA/TWN | D081-19 | V7610900494   |
| RE     | D081-27 | V7610801071   |
| RA     | D081-29 | V7610801186   |
| RAC    | D082-17 | V7710800124   |
| RA/TWN | D082-19 | V7711100103   |
| RCN    | D082-21 | V7711100104   |
| RE     | D082-27 | V7710800307   |
| RA     | D082-29 | V7710800234   |

## Technical Bulletin

Reissued:13-Feb-12

Model: V-C3

Date: 24-Nov-11

No.: RD081072a

#### **RTB Reissue**

The items in *bold italics* were corrected or added.

| Subject: CPU and firmware Change Notification          |                 |               | Prepared by: K. Yamamoto |                         |
|--|-----------------|---------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/P Tech Service Dept. |                 |               |                          |                         |
| Classification:  | Troubleshooting | Part informat | ion                      | Action required         |
|  | Mechanical      | Electrical    |                          | Service manual revision |
|  | Paper path      | Transmit/rec  | eive                     | Retrofit information    |
|  | Product Safety  | 🗌 Other (     | )                        | Tier 2                  |

### Important Information About ADF PCB Replacement

### Background

Due to the March 11 earthquake and tsunami disaster in the Tohoku region of Japan, many production facilities in the area suffered extensive damage. This has caused an interruption in the supply of electrical parts for PCBs used on Ricoh products. To continue machine production, a different type of CPU had to be used on PCBs, beginning from July production.

### Service parts changes

1) As a result, a modified version of the ADF firmware is preloaded on boards that use the new CPU. This change is shown in the first line in the table below.

Note:

- There is no difference in machine function or performance. This is why the interchangeability of boards with the old and new CPUs is O/O.
- However, the compatibility of the old/new PCB and old/new firmware is as follows:

|     |      | Firmware                                     |  |  |  |
|-----|------|--|--|--|--|
|     |      | Old: New:                                    |  |  |  |
| PCB | Old: | Supported                                    | NOT supported<br>(see Important Notes below) |  |  |
|     | New: | NOT supported<br>(see Important Notes below) | Supported                                    |  |  |

 The board containing the old CPU (and old firmware) is still available for order, under a new part number. This is shown in the second line in the table below.

**Note:** This is because some machines in the field still require the old firmware version (e.g. customized machines, locally tested/approved machines).

| Old Part Number | New Part Number | Description            | I/C |
|-----------------|-----------------|------------------------|-----|
| D4125505        | D4125506        | PCB:MAIN CONTROL:ASS'Y | O/O |
| -               | D4125507        | PCB:MAIN CONTROL:ASS'Y |     |

Cut in serial number From November 2011 production Reissued:13-Feb-12

Model: V-C3

Date: 24-Nov-11

No.: RD081072a

### **Important Notes**

Make sure to keep the following in mind:

- Do not install the old firmware (v. 01.620:05 and older) on the new ADF board. This is because the old firmware cannot be used on the new board, and the new firmware (v.90.000:01; The new version starts with a "9") cannot be used on the old board. If you install the old firmware on the new engine board by mistake, the new engine board will be damaged, and there is no way to repair except replace it. For this reason, the new firmware will not be released to the field.
- If you replace the ADF board on a machine that still requires the old firmware version, as mentioned above, please order the board using P/N D D4125507.

RCL (Japan) Production

| Model Code | Serial Number |
|------------|---------------|
| D081-17    | V7611100334   |
| D081-19    | V7620100634   |
| D081-27    | V7611100639   |
| D081-29    | V7611200584   |
| D082-17    | V7711100142   |
| D082-19    | V7720100127   |
| D082-21    | V7711200151   |
| D082-27    | V7711200157   |
| D082-29    | V7711200181   |

## Technical Bulletin

Reissued:22-Feb-12 Model: Model V-C3

Date: 28-Nov-11

No.: RD081073a

#### **RTB Reissue**

| The pictures   | in this RTB were change | d.            |          |                         |
|--|-------------------------|---------------|----------|-------------------------|
| Subject: Lubrication points(Fusing Gears)              |                         |               | Prepared | d by: Takeshi Toriumi   |
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/P Tech Service Dept. |                         |               |          |                         |
| Classification:  | ☐ Troubleshooting       | Part informat | tion     | Action required         |
|  | 🗌 Mechanical            | Electrical    |          | Service manual revision |
|  | Paper path              | Transmit/rec  | eive     | Retrofit information    |
|  | Product Safety          | 🗌 Other (     | )        | Tier 2                  |

#### SYMPTOM

Rust powder from the fusing gears is scattered in the area under the fusing unit.



### CAUSE

The fusing gears were not lubricated correctly when they were replaced or at PM. As a result, the friction generates rust powder.

#### SOLUTION

**Apply a total of 2g of Grease Barrierta S552R** to the two gears shown below (AB014322 / GEAR: IDLER: PRESSURE ROLLER, and AB014323 / GEAR: IDLER: DRIVE) whenever you replace the gears or at PM (150K). **See the next page for details.** 

**Note:** This solution is already mentioned in the Service Manual (2. Appendix, PM Tables, Lubrication Points, Fusing Unit, pg. 66). However, the specific amount of grease and other details were included below to ensure that all field technicians are made aware.

| DI | CO |  |
|----|----|--|
|    | U  |  |

Date: 28-Nov-11

Reissued:22-Feb-12 Model: Model V-C3

No.: RD081073a

Apply **1g** of Grease Barrierta to each gear (**a total of 2g**) as you rotate the gear, making sure that the grease is spread out evenly across the gear surface.







# Technical Bulletin

### **PAGE: 1/2**

| Model: V-C3 Dat  |                 |                | te: 02-Dec-11                |              | No.: RD081074 |                   |
|--|-----------------|----------------|------------------------------|--------------|---------------|-------------------|
| Subject: Service Manual Revision (SC501-504)           |                 |                | Prepared by: Chihiro Shimaji |              |               |                   |
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/P Tech Service Dept. |                 |                |                              |              |               |                   |
| Classification:  | Troubleshooting | 🗌 Part informa |                              | ation Action |               | n required        |
|  | Mechanical      | Electric       | al                           |              | Servic        | e manual revision |
|  | Paper path      | 🗌 Transm       | it/rec                       | eive         | Retro         | fit information   |
|  | Product Safety  | Other (        |                              | )            | Tier 2        |                   |

## Service Manual Revision

D081/D082

**Replace** the descriptions for SC501, SC503, and SC504 with the following.

Note: The description for SC502 was deleted, since it does not occur on this model.

### SC Codes Group 5: Paper Feed

Pg. 101, 102

| SC501 | В | Tray 1 (tandem tray) lift malfu  | nction   |
|-------|---|--|--|
| SC501 | В | <ul> <li>Tray 1 (tandem tray) lift malful</li> <li>The tray lift sensor is not activated within 10s after the tray lift motor starts lifting the bottom plate.</li> <li>The tray lift sensor is not deactivated within 1.5s after the tray starts lowering.</li> <li>A tray overload is detected when the tray is pushed in.</li> <li>The lower limit sensor of the LCT does not detect the lower limit within 10s.</li> </ul> | <ul> <li>Tray lift motor defective or disconnected</li> <li>Paper or other obstacle trapped between tray and motor</li> <li>Pick-up solenoid disconnected or blocked by an obstacle</li> <li>Too much paper loaded in tray</li> </ul> Note: <ul> <li>At first, the machine displays a message asking the operator to reset the tray.</li> <li>This SC will not be displayed until the operator has pulled the tray out and pushed it in three times.</li> <li>If the operator turns the machine off/on before the tray, this three-</li> </ul> |
|       |   |  | and closing of the tray, this three-<br>count is reset.  |

# Technical Bulletin

**PAGE: 2/2** 

Model: V-C3

Date: 02-Dec-11

No.: RD081074

| SC503 | В | Tray 2 lift malfunction  |  |
|-------|---|--|--|
|       |   | <ul> <li>The tray lift sensor is not activated within 10s after the tray lift motor starts lifting the bottom plate.</li> <li>The tray lift sensor is not deactivated within 1.5s after the tray starts lowering.</li> <li>A tray overload is</li> </ul> | <ul> <li>Tray lift motor defective or<br/>disconnected</li> <li>Paper or other obstacle trapped<br/>between tray and motor</li> <li>Pick-up solenoid disconnected or<br/>blocked by an obstacle</li> <li>Too much paper loaded in tray</li> </ul>  |
|       |   | detected when the tray is  | Note:  |
|       |   | pushed in.   | <ul> <li>At first, the machine displays a message asking the operator to reset the tray.</li> <li>This SC will not be displayed until the operator has pulled the tray out and pushed it in three times.</li> <li>If the operator turns the machine off/on before the third opening and closing of the tray, this three-count is reset.</li> </ul> |

| SC504 | В | Tray <b>3</b> lift malfunction  |  |
|-------|---|---|--|
| 30304 | D | <ul> <li>The tray lift sensor is not activated within 10s after the tray lift motor starts lifting the bottom plate.</li> <li>The tray lift sensor is not deactivated within 1.5s after the tray starts lowering.</li> <li>A tray overload is detected when the tray is pushed in.</li> </ul> | <ul> <li>Tray lift motor defective or<br/>disconnected</li> <li>Paper or other obstacle trapped<br/>between tray and motor</li> <li>Pick-up solenoid disconnected or<br/>blocked by an obstacle</li> <li>Too much paper loaded in tray</li> <li>Note:</li> <li>At first, the machine displays a<br/>message asking the operator to<br/>reset the tray.</li> <li>This SC will not be displayed<br/>until the operator has pulled the<br/>tray out and pushed it in three<br/>times.</li> <li>If the operator turns the machine<br/>off/on before the third opening<br/>and closing of the tray, this three-<br/>count is reset</li> </ul> |



Model: V-C3

Date: 07-Dec-11

No.: RD081075

| Subject: Black lines appear in paper direction. |                               |               | Prepared by: Chihiro Shimaji |                         |  |
|---|-------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| From: 1st Tech Se                               | ervice Sect., MFP/P Tech Serv | rice Dept.    |                              |                         |  |
| Classification:                                 | Troubleshooting               | Part informat | tion                         | Action required         |  |
|   | 🗌 Mechanical                  | Electrical    |                              | Service manual revision |  |
|   | Paper path                    | Transmit/rec  | eive                         | Retrofit information    |  |
|   | Product Safety                | Other (       | )                            | 🛛 Tier 2                |  |

#### SYMPTOM

Black lines appear along the paper feed direction when making copies/scans using the ADF.

### CAUSE

The ADF scanning glass is dirty.

### SOLUTION

If the symptom is reported:

- 1. Clean the ADF scanning glass and white scanning belt with a wet cloth, and then dry these parts with a dry cloth.
- 2. If the customer agrees to the following condition (which is a machine specification), set **SP4-020-001** (DF dust check) to a value of **1** (**ON**).

When this mode is enabled, the First Copy Time may be about one second slower. This is because the scanning position may need to be optimized if dust is detected on the scanning glass.

- **Note:** When this mode is enabled, if dust is detected on the ADF scanning glass, the following will happen.
  - The first mirror will be moved (up to a maximum of two times), so that the original can be scanned through a dust-free area on the exposure glass.
  - The following message is displayed in the lower left-hand corner of the LCD: "Clean the front side of the scanning glass (located next to the exposure glass)."

# Technical Bulletin

### **PAGE: 1/1**

| Model: V-C3 Da   |                 |           | Dat    | ate: 26-Jan-12               |        | No.: RD081076     |
|--|-----------------|-----------|--------|------------------------------|--------|-------------------|
| Subject: Service Manual Revision (SP5420-001,5420-002) |                 |           |        | Prepared by: Chihiro Shimaji |        |                   |
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/P Tech Service Dept. |                 |           |        |                              |        |                   |
| Classification:  | Troubleshooting | Part info | ormat  | tion                         | Action | n required        |
|  | Mechanical      | Electric  | al     |                              | Servic | e manual revision |
|  | Paper path      | Transm    | it/rec | eive                         | Retrof | fit information   |
|  | Product Safety  | Other (   |        | )                            | Tier 2 |                   |

### **Service Manual Revision**

### D081/D082

- **Delete** the crossed-out sentence in the description for SP 5420-001.
- Add the sentences in **bold** to the description for SP 5420-002.

### 4. Appendix: Service Program Mode Tables

pg. 318

| 5420 | User Authentication  |
|------|--|
|      | These settings should be done with the System Administrator.       |
|      | Note: These functions are enabled only after the user access       |
|      | feature has been enabled.  |
| 1    | Сору   |
|      | Determines whether certification is required before a user can use |
|      | the copy applications.   |
|      | [0 to 1/0/1]   |
|      | 0: On  |
|      | 1: Off   |
|      | <del>2: Color Security Setting</del>                               |
| 2    | Color Security Setting   |
|      | Enables or disables the color copy limitation for each copy        |
|      | mode when user authentication is "ON".                             |
|      | 0: Enable (default), 1: Disable                                    |
|      | Bit0: B/W mode   |
|      | Bit1: Mono color mode  |
|      | Bit2: Two colors mode  |
|      | Bit3: Full color mode  |
|      | Bit4: Automatic color mode   |
|      | Bit5 to 7: Reserved  |

| R | ЭН |
|---|----|
|   |    |

Model: V-C3

Date: 07-Feb-12

No.: RD081077

| Subject: How to choose the default value of SP1009-001 |                               |                  | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |                         |  |
|--|-------------------------------|------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| From: 1st Tech Se                                      | ervice Sect., MFP/P Tech Serv | vice Dept.       |                              |                         |  |
| Classification:  | ☐ Troubleshooting             | Part information | tion                         | Action required         |  |
|  | 🗌 Mechanical                  | Electrical       |                              | Service manual revision |  |
|  | Paper path                    | Transmit/rec     | eive                         | Retrofit information    |  |
|  | Product Safety                | Other (          | )                            | Tier 2                  |  |

### SYMPTOM

The default value (0) for **SP1009-001** (PreFeed Time Adj\_Tray.1) is not displayed when the machine is using System/Copy Firmware **v1.02 or later**, as shown in Fig. 2 below.



## CAUSE

Bug in System/Copy firmware v1.02 or later

## SOLUTION

If the symptom occurs and you need to return SP1009-001 to its default (0):

- 1. Downgrade the System/Copy firmware to v1.01 or earlier.
- 2. Set SP1009-001 to its default (0).
- 3. Upgrade the System/Copy firmware back to v1.02 or later.

Model: V-C3

RICOH

Date: 28-Mar-12

No.: RD081078

| Subject: Important Information about Replacing Drum Lubricant<br>Bar |                               |               | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |                         |  |
|--|-------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| From: 1st Tech Se  | ervice Sect., MFP/P Tech Serv | vice Dept.    |                              |                         |  |
| Classification:  | Troubleshooting               | Part informat | ion                          | Action required         |  |
|  | 🗌 Mechanical                  | Electrical    |                              | Service manual revision |  |
|  | Paper path                    | Transmit/rece | eive                         | Retrofit information    |  |
|  | Product Safety                | 🗌 Other (     | )                            | 🛛 Tier 2                |  |

## Important Information about Replacing the Drum Lubricant Bar

- Please make sure to replace the following PM parts for the PCU at the recommended **PM intervals**, which are: **200K for BK** PCU parts and **150K for color** PCU parts.
- If you do not, **image quality issues** such as lines or dirty background will occur, and the drum **will not achieve its target yield (450k)**. This is because when these parts are used beyond its PM interval, the drum will deteriorate quickly (from filming or other processes).

#### **PM Parts for the Black (BK) PCU:**

| P/N      | Description        | Q'ty | PM interval |
|----------|--------------------|------|-------------|
| D0142321 | Drum Lubricant Bar | 1    | 200k        |

#### **PM Parts for Color PCUs:**

| P/N      | Description        | Q'ty | PM interval |
|----------|--------------------|------|-------------|
| D0142321 | Drum Lubricant Bar | 3    | 150k        |

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3 D   |   |                     | Dat                  | e: 18-Apr              | -12      | No.: RD081079        |  |
|---|---|---------------------|----------------------|------------------------|----------|----------------------|--|
| Subject:  |   |                     | Prepared by: C.Tsuji |                        |          |                      |  |
| Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (2012_Apr)             |   |                     |                      |                        |          |                      |  |
| From: PP Solution Support Sec., PP Tech Service Dept. |   |                     |                      |                        |          |                      |  |
| Classification:                                       | ssification: Troubleshooting Part informa |                     | ormat                | tion                   | Action   | n required           |  |
|   | 🗌 Mechanical                              | Electrical          |                      | ☐ Service ma<br>eceive |          | vice manual revision |  |
|   | Paper path                                |                     |                      |                        |          | fit information      |  |
|   | Product Safety                            | $\boxtimes$ Other ( |                      | )                      | 🗌 Tier 2 |                      |  |

This RTB has been issue to announce the release notes for set of patches (5 patches in total) for Color Controller E-7200 System version 1.0.

#### Files included in this release

Extract the **D5027565.exe** and check that 1st folder which consists of 5 patches is created.

#### Folder Name / File Name / File Size / Reboot

| 1st | / 1-1A6MX9.ps | / 1,539,039 byte / not Exclusive  |
|-----|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1st | / 1-1BZK7I.ps | / 788,651 byte / not Exclusive    |
| 1st | / 1-1BZJBO.ps | / 16,130,488 byte / not Exclusive |
| 1st | / 1-1BZKDQ.ps | / 314,957 byte / not Exclusive    |
| 1st | / 1-1BZKCS.ps | / 23,640 byte / not Exclusive     |

Note: Important!! Strictly follow the installation order as indicated here above.

#### Issue(s) addressed with this release

- 1-1A6MX9 : Jobs with SEF orientation do not print when the printer is in Auto shut-off mode.
- 1-1BZK7I : PostScript rangecheck error occurs when a PDF file with booklet staple is processed.
- 1-1BZJBO : When a particular PDF file is processed, the raster does not contain a pattern image.
- 1-1BZKDQ: Scale to fit is not honored for a particular job.
- 1-1BZKCS: Output is incorrect when RGB jobs with Pure Black are printed.

### Preparation before Installation

- 1. Please print out the configuration page. Verify the **Server Info** section.
- 2. If any prerequisites listed below, they must be installed in the order specified before applying the "**1-1A6MX9.ps**" patch:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps 1-17LVX9.ps 1-18R20T.ps



| Ν | lodel: V-C3   | Date: 18-Apr-12        | No.: R  | D081079     |
|---|---|------------------------|---------|-------------|
| 3 | Do NOT install any of the following patches after ins | talling the 1-1A6MX9 n | s natch | If you must |

install any of the following patches, do so before installing the **1-1A6MX9.ps** patch:

1-19UI8W.ps

4. If any prerequisites listed below, they must be installed in the order specified before applying the "1-1BZK7I.ps", "1-1BZKDQ.ps" and "1-1BZKCS.ps" patch:

1-16OVJ9.ps 1-17LVX9.ps

5. If any prerequisites listed below, they must be installed in the order specified before applying the "1-1BZJB0.ps" patch:

1-16OVJ9.ps 1-17LVX9.ps 1-18206B.ps 1-1AEXIP.ps

6. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

#### Notes

- 1. You should keep to install order when the patch will be installed.
- 2. You should execute the reboot when you install the patch of "Exclusive". (The patch names that you installed will be shown in the configuration after reboot.)
- 3. You should execute the reboot when you installed all patches.
- Before installing the next patch, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds until the file is done processing.

#### Patch installation instructions

- 1. Download/Import the patch file **1-1A6MX9.ps** with Command Workstation to the "Direct" queue.
- 2. Wait more than 60 seconds.
- 3. Repeat the steps #1 and #2 with the following patches

1-1BZK7I.ps 1-1BZJBO.ps 1-1BZKDQ.ps 1-1BZKCS.ps

4. After waiting 60 seconds after the last patch has been downloaded/imported, reboot the system. This will ensure the patch file is completely processed. From either Command Workstation or the Fiery LCD, select "Shut Down" and then "Reboot System".



| Mo | odel: V-C3  | Date: 18-Apr-12        | No.: RD081079     |
|----|---|------------------------|-------------------|
| 5. | Wait until the Fiery has come to idle and print out | he configuration page. | Verify the Update |

Wait until the Fiery has come to idle and print out the configuration page. Verify the Update Info section. It should contain the following patch numbers:

| 1-1A6MX9 |
|----------|
| 1-1BZK7I |

- 1-1BZJBO
- 1-1BZKDQ
- 1-1BZKCS

# Technical Bulletin

#### PAGE: 1/2

| Model: Model V-C3                                      |                   |                | Date: 04-Jun-12 |                    | 12                           | No.: RD081080     |  |
|--|-------------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|--|
| Subject: Jam14(Fusing Ex Sn:Late) and Dog Eared        |                   |                |                 |                    | Prepared by: Chihiro Shimaji |                   |  |
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/P Tech Service Dept. |                   |                |                 |                    |                              |                   |  |
| Classification:  | ☐ Troubleshooting | 🗌 Part informa |                 | tion               | Action                       | n required        |  |
|  | Mechanical        | Electrical     |                 |                    | Servic                       | e manual revision |  |
|  | 🛛 Paper path      | Transmit/rec   |                 | eive 🗌 Retrofit in |                              | fit information   |  |
|  | Product Safety    | Other (        |                 | )                  | 🛛 Tier 2                     |                   |  |

### SYMPTOM

JAM 14 (Fusing Ex Sn: Late) or dog ears occur when making duplex prints.

## CAUSE

As the front and rear nip widths increase with time, the pressure applied to the paper in these areas also increases. As a result, the paper curls and catches on the fusing stripper plate unit.

### SOLUTION

Adjust the fusing nip using the procedure below.

### Procedure

- Print out a test pattern with SP-2-109-002 at 100% coverage onto plain paper. SP-2-109-002(Test Pattern) -> [12:100% Coverage] -> [Setting]-> [Copy Screen] ->BW Printing (A4/LT)
- 2. Load the sheet you printed out in Step 1 into the bypass tray, with the printed side facing up (A4/LT, LEF).
- 3. Execute SP1-111-001 (Nip Width: Execute).
- Measure the widths of either the left or right band at the front, center, and rear. Important: Measure the front and rear fusing nips at about 10-20mm from the edge of the paper.



|--|

Model: Model V-C3

RICOH

Date: 04-Jun-12

No.: RD081080

### TARGETS:

- Center nip width: 13.5 ± 0.5mm -
- Difference between front and rear nip widths: ± 0.5mm \_
- 5. If one of the measurements is not within the target, turn the nip control screw to adjust the nip.

Clockwise: Increases the nip width Counterclockwise: Decreases the nip width

Note: One complete rotation of the control screw changes the nip width by 1mm.



6. Repeat the procedure until **both** measurements are within the target.

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3 Da  |   |               | Dat                  | ate: 07-Jun-12 |          | No.: RD081081     |
|---|---|---------------|----------------------|----------------|----------|-------------------|
| Subject:  |   |               | Prepared by: C.Tsuji |                |          |                   |
| Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (2012_May)             |   |               |                      |                |          |                   |
| From: PP Solution Support Sec., PP Tech Service Dept. |   |               |                      |                |          |                   |
| Classification:                                       | ssification: Troubleshooting Part informa |               | ormat                | tion           | Action   | required          |
|   | Mechanical                                | Electric      | al                   |                | Servic   | e manual revision |
|   | Paper path                                | 🗌 Transm      | it/rec               | eive           | Retrof   | it information    |
|   | Product Safety                            | igvee Other ( |                      | )              | 🗌 Tier 2 |                   |

This RTB has been issue to announce the release notes for set of patches (17 patches in total) for Color Controller E-7200 System version 1.0.

#### Files included in this release

Extract the **D5027750.exe** and check that 1st folder which consists of 17 patches is created.

| Folder | File Name   | File Size | Reboot        |
|--------|-------------|-----------|---------------|
| Name   |             |           |               |
| 1st    | 1-1A240J.ps | 1.47 MB   | not Exclusive |
|        | 1-1CGCOU.ps | 1.47 MB   | not Exclusive |
|        | 1-1CT781.ps | 198.19 KB | not Exclusive |
|        | 1-1CT7G9.ps | 104.77 KB | not Exclusive |
|        | 1-1CT7KB.ps | 4.98 MB   | not Exclusive |
|        | 1-1CYIAN.ps | 2.36 MB   | not Exclusive |
|        | 1-1CYINU.ps | 8.74 MB   | not Exclusive |
|        | 1-1D0PPJ.ps | 578.60 KB | not Exclusive |
|        | 1-1D0POO.ps | 409.11 KB | not Exclusive |
|        | 1-1D4QD0.ps | 631.73 KB | not Exclusive |
|        | 1-1DO46D.ps | 3.71 MB   | not Exclusive |
|        | 1-1DMNS5.ps | 2.26 MB   | not Exclusive |
|        | 1-1DMNTZ.ps | 217.96 KB | not Exclusive |
|        | 1-1DYPAO.ps | 440.97 KB | not Exclusive |
|        | 1-1DFA7F.ps | 1.47 MB   | not Exclusive |
|        | 1-1CT79W.ps | 136.61 MB | not Exclusive |
|        | 1-1E8X3I.ps | 170.52 KB | not Exclusive |

Note: Important!! Strictly follow the installation order as indicated here above.

#### Issue(s) addressed with this release

(Except 1-1A240J, the issues below were originally found and reported by other Fiery controller models. Now the patches for the fix will be provided for this model.)

- 1-1A240J: Job Error occurs when a particular file is printed with larger than 12x18 page size and 1200dpi.
- 1-1CGCOU: Service Call SC670 may occur under certain circumstances when the prepaid card becomes empty.
- 1-1CT781: Patch to address duplex printing issue with PCL5 data.

| RICOH       | Technical B  | ulletin                     | <b>PAGE: 2/3</b>       |  |  |
|-------------|--|-----------------------------|------------------------|--|--|
| Model: V-C3 |  | Date: 07-Jun-12             | No.: RD081081          |  |  |
| ● 1-1CT7G9: | A particular PS job is classified as   | SPCL.                       |                        |  |  |
| • 1-1CT7KB: | The server crashes when a partic   | ular PDF file is Imported   | d to the Hold queue.   |  |  |
| ● 1-1CYIAN: | One part of image is printed in co   | lor for a particular file.  |                        |  |  |
| • 1-1CYINU: | Blank part of PDF data is garbled for a particular file.                       |                             |                        |  |  |
| • 1-1D0PPJ: | Scaling is not honored when Impose template that has Custom Scale set is used. |                             |                        |  |  |
| • 1-1D0POO: | Connection between server and printer runs out.                                |                             |                        |  |  |
| • 1-1D4QD0: | A 2 at Left staple job cannot be pr  | rinted on short edge fee    | d paper.               |  |  |
| • 1-1DO46D: | A particular PCL file does not prin  | t correctly.                |                        |  |  |
| 1-1DMNS5:   | An error message appears when  | printing a particular file  | with Mixed Media.      |  |  |
| • 1-1DMNTZ: | Specified pages are not printed w Held job.                                    | hen Print Range is set f    | or a Process and       |  |  |
| • 1-1DYPAO: | Controller HDD space increases,  | when more than 2GB d        | ata is given to print. |  |  |
| • 1-1DFA7F: | Server fails to staple jobs when E   | xtra Staple set to 1.       |                        |  |  |
| • 1-1CT79W: | Conflict message is displayed wh Virtual Printer's settings.                   | en CMYK Source profile      | e is set to none in    |  |  |
| • 1-1E8X3I: | The next job is not transmitted un   | til a current job is printe | d out.                 |  |  |
|             |  |                             |                        |  |  |

### Preparation before Installation

- 1. Please print out the configuration page. Verify the Update Information section.
- 2. For each group shown below, make sure that all patches have already been installed in the order they are listed in that group.

If there is a patch missing, follow the instructions in that patch's Release Note to install it. All patches within the same group must be installed in the order they are listed below.

#### Group A: 1-16OVJ9.ps 1-17LVX9.ps 1-18R20T.ps

### Group B:

1-19UI8W.ps 1-1A6MX9.ps

### Group C:

- 1-16OVJ9.ps
- 1-17LVX9.ps
- 1-182O6B.ps
- 1-1AEXIP.ps
- 1-1BZK7I.ps (Included in April 2011 Package)
- 1-1BZJBO.ps (Included in April 2011 Package)
- 1-1BZKDQ.ps (Included in April 2011 Package)

| RI | CO | Н |
|----|----|---|
|    |    |   |

| Model: V-C3 |  | Date: 07-Jun-12         | No.: RD081081      |
|-------------|--|-------------------------|--------------------|
|             |  |                         |                    |
| 3           | In the case where the customer needs to install a pa | atch which was previous | sly skinned in the |

In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

#### Patch installation instructions

1. With Command Workstation, download / import the patch to the "Direct" queue one by one with the following order.

#### [Caution]

You must wait at least 60 seconds after the patch file downloaded/imported before downloading the next patch. This will ensure the patch file is completely processed.

(1) 1-1A240J (2) 1-1CGCOU (3) 1-1CT781 (4) 1-1CT7G9 (5) 1-1CT7KB (6) 1-1CYIAN (7) 1-1CYINU (8) 1-1D0PPJ (9) 1-1D0POO (10) 1-1D4QD0 (11) 1-1DO46D (12) 1-1DMNS5 (13) 1-1DMNTZ (14) 1-1DYPAO (15) 1-1DFA7F (16) 1-1CT79W (17) 1-1E8X3I

- 2. From Command Workstation, choose Server -> Reboot Server, or from the fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.
- 3. Please wait until the Fiery has come to idle after the reboot to print out the configuration page. Verify the Update Information section. It should show in the downloaded order.

## Note

- 1. You should keep installing order when the patch will be installed.
- 2. All of these patches are **Not Exclusive** which means that it can be applied to the server along with other patches concurrently and only one server reboot/restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system. (The patch names that you installed will be shown in the configuration after reboot.)
- 3. You should execute the reboot when you installed all patches.
- 4. Before installing the next patch, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds until the file is done processing.
- 5. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3   |                            |   | Dat    | te: 08-Jun-          | 12       | No.: RD081082     |
|---|----------------------------|---|--------|----------------------|----------|-------------------|
| Subject:  |                            |   |        | Prepared by: C.Tsuji |          |                   |
| Patch Release for                                     | or E-7200 V.1.0 (1-1E4OMH. | .ps)  |        |                      |          |                   |
| From: PP Solution Support Sec., PP Tech Service Dept. |                            |   |        |                      |          |                   |
| Classification:                                       | Troubleshooting            | Part info   | orma   | tion                 | Action   | required          |
|   | Mechanical                 | Electric  | al     |                      | Servic   | e manual revision |
|   | Paper path                 | 🗌 Transm  | it/rec | eive                 | Retrof   | it information    |
|   | Product Safety             | extstyle 	ext |        | )                    | 🗌 Tier 2 |                   |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-1E4OMH**.ps for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | Issue(s)   |
|-------------|--|
| 1-1E4OMH.ps | <ul> <li>Patch to address the expiry of the EFI VeriSign certificate.</li> </ul>   |
|             | When launching the <i>Configure</i> menu from the WebTools, a pop-<br>up window appears with the following message:<br>"The certificate has Expired" |

### Before installing 1-1E4OMH.ps

Known issues listed below, read before installing 1-1E4OMH.ps patch:

 There is validation issues like "The certificate was signed by an untrusted issuer" on client machines that have JRE version from 15 to 20. There is a defect filed against couple of JRE versions which caused validations issues.

Please see the below link: <u>http://bugs.sun.com/bugdatabase/view\_bug.do?bug\_id=6904162</u> <Solution>

EFI recommends to update JRE to a version above 20 on the client machine.

- 2. The following prerequisites must be installed in the order specified before the **1-1E4OMH.ps** patch is installed:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps
  - 1-17LVX9.ps
- 3 This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 4 In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

| RICOH Tech  | Technical Bulletin |               |  |
|-------------|--------------------|---------------|--|
| Model: V-C3 | Date: 08-Jun-12    | No.: RD081082 |  |

#### Patch Update Procedure

- 1. Extract the **D5027767.exe** until you get the **1-1E4OMH.ps** file.
- 2. Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file **1-1E4OMH.ps** to the **Direct** connection.
- 3. Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 4. From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Shut down -> Reboot System.
- 5. Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 6. Verify that the System Updates Log section contains the patch number **1-1E4OMH**.

# Technical Bulletin

### **PAGE: 1/1**

| Model: V-C3 Date                                       |                 |              |        |                              | 2      | No.: RD081083     |
|--|-----------------|--------------|--------|------------------------------|--------|-------------------|
| Subject: P to P Revision                               |                 |              |        | Prepared by: Chihiro Shimaji |        |                   |
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/P Tech Service Dept. |                 |              |        |                              |        |                   |
| Classification:  | Troubleshooting | Part informa |        | tion                         | Action | n required        |
|  | Mechanical      | Electric     | al     |                              | Servic | e manual revision |
|  | Paper path      | 🗌 Transm     | it/rec | eive                         | Retro  | fit information   |
|  | Product Safety  | Other (      |        | )                            | Tier 2 |                   |

### **P-to-P Revision**

The following correction was made.

### ADF (FOR D081/D082) Point To Point Diagram (5/5)

| Incorrect<br>P/N | Correct<br>P/N | Name               | Page |
|------------------|----------------|--------------------|------|
| D5015880         | D5015752       | HARNESS: INTERFACE | 5/9  |



# Technical Bulletin

#### **PAGE: 1/1**

| Model: V-C3 Date                                       |                 |                |        | e: 31-Jul-1                  | 2        | No.: RD081084     |
|--|-----------------|----------------|--------|------------------------------|----------|-------------------|
| Subject: Fan Motor Service Code                        |                 |                |        | Prepared by: Takeshi Toriumi |          |                   |
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/P Tech Service Dept. |                 |                |        |                              |          |                   |
| Classification:  | Troubleshooting | 🗌 Part informa |        | tion Action required         |          | n required        |
|  | Mechanical      | Electric       | al     |                              | Servic   | e manual revision |
|  | Paper path      | 🗌 Transm       | it/rec | eive                         | Retrof   | fit information   |
|  | Product Safety  | Other (        |        | )                            | 🛛 Tier 2 |                   |

### P-to-P, Service Manual Revision

The areas shown in **bold** (titles, Note) were changed or added.

### P to P:

D081/D082 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT (3/4)

| Symbol | Name                            | Index No. | P to P | Page |
|--------|---------------------------------|-----------|--------|------|
| M14    | Fusing <b>Suction</b> Fan Motor | 15        | F4     | 2/5  |

#### Service Manual:

3. Appendix: Service Call Conditions

SC Codes Group 5: Paper Feed (Pg.105)

| SC530 | В | Fusing Exhaust fan / Drive Exit fan / Fusing Unit Fan Motor: Lower error                  |
|-------|---|---|
|       |   | The VBCU did not receive the lock signal 5 seconds after the fusing unit fan switches on. |
|       |   | Fan harness disconnected or damaged   |
|       |   | Fan blocked by an obstruction   |
|       |   | • Fan damaged   |

| SC531 | В | Peltier Cooling Fan Motor error  |
|-------|---|--|
|       |   | The lock signal remained HIGH for 5 sec. while the fan at the front of the fusing unit near the heat dissipation fins was operating. |
|       |   | Fan harness disconnected or damaged  |
|       |   | Fan blocked by an obstruction  |
|       |   | • Fan damaged  |

#### Note: The D081/D082 copier does not have a Peltier unit.

| SC533 | В | <b>Fusing Suction fan</b> error<br>The lock signal remained HIGH for 5 sec. while the fan that draws air out of the fusing unit was operating. |  |
|-------|---|--|--|
|       |   | Fan harness disconnected, damaged  |  |
|       |   | Fan blocked by an obstruction  |  |
|       |   | • Fan damaged  |  |
# Technical Bulletin

#### PAGE: 1/1

| Model: V-C2/3 Dat                           |                              | Date: 06-Aug-12 |          | No.: RD081085 |              |                   |
|---|------------------------------|-----------------|----------|---------------|--------------|-------------------|
| Subject: Service Manual Revision(SP7504-99) |                              |                 | Prepared | d by: Chil    | hiro Shimaji |                   |
| From: 1st Tech S                            | ervice Sect., MFP/P Tech Ser | vice Dept.      |          |               |              |                   |
| Classification:                             | Troubleshooting              | Part info       | ormat    | tion          | Action       | required          |
|   | Mechanical                   | Electric        | al       |               | Servic       | e manual revision |
|   | Paper path                   | Transm          | it/rec   | eive          | Retrof       | it information    |
|   | Product Safety               | Other (         |          | )             | Tier 2       |                   |

## **Service Manual Revision**

The following correction was made.

#### p.432: SP7504-99

| 7504 | Paper Jam Loc D014/D015 Copier   |                          |  |  |
|------|--|--------------------------|--|--|
|      | Displays the list of possible locations where a jam could have occurred in the copier. Press<br>the appropriate key to display the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by the<br>failure of a sensor to activate. |                          |  |  |
| 99   | Bypass Paper Feed Sn   | Bypass Paper Feed Sensor |  |  |

#### S46: Double-Feed Detection Sensor

#### Note:

- Two sensors, one mounted above and one below the paper at the registration rollers detect the opacity of the first sheet and compare this reading for every subsequent sheet. If the reading is higher (thicker paper) or lower (thinner paper), the sensor triggers an error. For more, see Section 6.13.12 PAPER TYPE AND DOUBLE-FEED DETECTION of the V-C1 Service Manual.
- **SP1301/02** enables/disables double-feed and paper type detection for the paper feed sources (trays 1 to 3, the LCT, and bypass tray).
- You can also switch these features on and with User Tool settings: [User Tools/Counter]> System Settings> Tray Paper Setting> Next (3 times)> Double Feed Detect/Paper Type Detect> Off (or On)> for Bypass Tray; Tray 1, 2, 3; or LCT.
- This function cannot operate for these paper type selections: Reused, Color Paper, Adhesive Labels, and Tab Paper. If double-feed Jam occurs by using these papers, please try to turn double-feed detection off. (Default: ON).

# Technical Bulletin

### **PAGE: 1/2**

| Model: V-C3 Da                            |                               |            | Dat     | ite: 03-Oct-12 |              | No.: RD081086     |
|---|-------------------------------|------------|---------|----------------|--------------|-------------------|
| Subject: Service Manual Revision (SP7504) |                               |            | Prepare | d by: Chil     | hiro Shimaji |                   |
| From: 1st Tech S                          | ervice Sect., MFP/P Tech Serv | rice Dept. |         |                |              |                   |
| Classification:                           | Troubleshooting               | Part info  | ormat   | tion           | Action       | n required        |
|   | Mechanical                    | Electric   | al      |                | Servic       | e manual revision |
|   | Paper path                    | Transm     | it/rec  | eive           | Retrof       | fit information   |
|   | Product Safety                | Other (    |         | )              | Tier 2       |                   |

### **Service Manual Revision**

D081/D082

The areas in red were added.

| 7504 | Paper Jam Loc                       | Cover Interposer Tray B835             |
|------|-------------------------------------|--|
|      | Displays the list of possible locat | tions where a jam could have occurred. |
|      | Press the appropriate key to disp   | play the jam count for that location.  |
|      | These jams are caused by the fa     | ailure of a sensor to activate.        |
|      | On Operation Panel                  | Actual Component Name                  |
| 230  | Tray 1: No Feed                     | 1st Paper Feed Motor                   |
|      |                                     | 1st Transport Motor                    |
|      |                                     | 1st Paper Feed Sensor                  |
| 231  | Tray 2: No Feed                     | 2nd Paper Feed Motor                   |
|      |                                     | 2nd Transport Motor                    |
|      |                                     | 2nd Paper Feed Sensor                  |
| 232  | Tray 1: Grip Sn                     | 1st Transport Motor                    |
|      |                                     | 2nd Transport Motor                    |
|      |                                     | 1st Transport Sensor                   |
| 233  | Tray 2: Grip Sn                     | 2nd Transport Motor                    |
|      |                                     | Vertical Transport Motor               |
|      |                                     | 2nd Transport Sensor                   |
| 234  | Tray 1: Trans Jam                   | 1st Transport Motor                    |
|      |                                     | 2nd Transport Motor                    |
|      |                                     | 1st Vertical Transport Sensor          |
| 235  | Tray 2: Trans Jam                   | Vertical Transport Motor               |
|      |                                     | 2nd Vertical Transport Sensor          |
| 236  | Exit Jam                            | Vertical Transport Motor               |
|      |                                     | Horizontal Transport Motor             |
|      |                                     | Vertical Exit Sensor                   |
| 237  | Entrance Sn Jam                     | Horizontal Transport Motor             |
|      |                                     | Entrance Sensor                        |
| 238  | Exit Sn Jam                         | Horizontal Transport Motor             |
|      |                                     | Vertical Transport Motor               |
|      |                                     | Exit Sensor                            |
| 239  | Tray 1: Lift Motor                  | 1st Lift Motor                         |
|      |                                     | 1st paper upper limit Sensor           |
|      |                                     | 1st Lower Limit Sensor                 |

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: | V-C3                   |                                | Date: 03-Oct-12  | No.: RD081086         |  |  |
|--------|------------------------|--------------------------------|--|-----------------------|--|--|
| 240    | Tray 2: Lift Motor     | 2nd Lif<br>2nd pa<br>2nd Lo    | t Motor<br>per upper limit Sens<br>wer Limit Sensor      | sor                   |  |  |
| 241    | Tray 1: Pickup Motor   | 1st Pic<br>1st Pic             | 1st Pick-Up Motor<br>1st Pick-Up Roller HP Sensor        |                       |  |  |
| 242    | Tray 2: Pickup Motor   | 2nd Pic<br>2nd Pic             | ck-Up Motor<br>ck-Up Roller HP Sen                       | ISOr                  |  |  |
| 250    | RB Entrance Late Jam   | Entran                         | ce Sensor  |                       |  |  |
| 251    | RB Entrance Lag Jam    | Entran<br>Entran               | ce Sensor<br>ce Motor                                    |                       |  |  |
|        |                        | If the le<br>or more<br>Transp | ength of the paper is<br>e (Example: A3, DL<br>ort Motor | s 241mm<br>Г, other): |  |  |
| 252    | RB Horiz Path Late Jam | Transp<br>If the le<br>than 24 | ort Sensor<br>ength of the paper is<br>I1mm (Example: A4 | s less<br>, LT,       |  |  |
|        |                        | other):                        | Transport Motor  |                       |  |  |
| 253    | RB Horiz Path Lag Jam  | Transp<br>Exit Mo              | ort Sensor<br>otor                                       |                       |  |  |
| 254    | RB Exit Late Jam       | Exit Se                        | nsor   |                       |  |  |
| 255    | RB Exit Lag Jam        | Exit Se                        | nsor   |                       |  |  |

# Technical Bulletin

#### **PAGE: 1/1**

| Model: V-C3 Date  |                               |           | e: 09-Oct- | 12      | No.: RD081087 |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|-----------|------------|---------|---------------|-------------------|
| Subject: P to P R | Revision                      |           |            | Prepare | d by: Chil    | hiro Shimaji      |
| From: 1st Tech S  | ervice Sect., MFP/P Tech Serv | ice Dept. |            |         |               |                   |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting               | Part info | ormat      | tion    | Action        | 1 required        |
|                   | Mechanical                    | Electric  | al         |         | Servic        | e manual revision |
|                   | Paper path                    | Transm    | it/rec     | eive    | Retrof        | fit information   |
|                   | Product Safety                | Other (   |            | )       | Tier 2        |                   |

### **P-to-P Revision**

The following correction was made.

## D081/D082 POINT TO POINT DIAGRAM (4/5)

| Incorrect | Correct |
|-----------|---------|
| CN#       | CN#     |
| CN30-1    | CN371-1 |



### PAGE: 1/2

| Model: V-C3   |                                |             | Date           | : 06-Nov-12 | No.: RD081088      |
|---|--------------------------------|-------------|----------------|-------------|--------------------|
| Subject: Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-1FCCIG.ps) |                                |             | Prepared by: C | Tsuji       |                    |
| From: PP Solutio                                      | n Support Sec., PP Tech Servic | e Dept.     |                |             |                    |
| Classification:                                       | Troubleshooting                | 🗌 Part info | ormatio        | on 🗌 Actior | n required         |
|   | Mechanical                     | Electrica   | al             | Servic      | ce manual revision |
|   | Paper path                     | 🗌 Transm    | it/rece        | ive 🗌 Retro | fit information    |
|   | Product Safety                 | 🛛 Other (   | )              | Tier 2      |                    |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-1FCCIG**.ps for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | lssue(s)   |
|-------------|--|
| 1-1FCCIG.ps | <ul> <li>A patch to fix two issues with the BIOS Version string on the<br/>Configuration page.</li> </ul>  |
|             | <ol> <li>Case #1 (BIOS Version 1.40)<br/>The BIOS Version string indicates the correct version, but the<br/>wrong date.</li> <li>Case #2 (BIOS Version 1.50)<br/>The BIOS Version string indicates 0.00 00/00/00.</li> </ol> |

## Before installing 1-1FCCIG.ps

- 1. The following prerequisites must be installed in the order specified before the **1-1FCCIG.ps** patch is installed:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps

RICOH

- 1-17LVX9.ps
- 2. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 3. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

### Patch Update Procedure

- 1. Extract the **D5027590.exe** until you get the **1-1FCCIG.ps** file.
- 2. Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 3. Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file **1-1FCCIG.ps** to the **Direct** connection.



| Mode | el: V-C3                                | Date: 06-Nov-12            | No.: RD081088      |
|------|---|----------------------------|--------------------|
| 4    | Before reporting the system to ensure t | that the patch file is con | nnletely processed |

- Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 5. From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Shut down -> Reboot System.
- 6. Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 7. Verify that the System Updates Log section contains the patch number **1-1FCCIG**.

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: v-c3 Dat                                       |                                |           | e: 15-Nov- | ·12      | No.: RD081089 |                    |
|---|--------------------------------|-----------|------------|----------|---------------|--------------------|
| Subject: Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-1DOVI0.ps) |                                |           | Prepared   | by: C.Ts | uji           |                    |
| From: PP Solutior                                     | n Support Sec., PP Tech Servio | ce Dept.  |            |          |               |                    |
| Classification:                                       | Troubleshooting                | Part info | ormat      | tion     | Action        | n required         |
|   | Mechanical                     | Electric  | al         |          | Servic        | ce manual revision |
|   | Paper path                     | Transm    | it/rec     | eive     | Retrof        | fit information    |
|   | Product Safety                 | 🛛 Other ( |            | )        | Tier 2        |                    |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-1DOVI0**.ps for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | Issue(s)   |
|-------------|--|
| 1-1DOVI0.ps | <ul> <li>A Patch to support Direct Mobile Printing.</li> </ul> |

### About Mass-production controller units

From 2012 September mass-production, the E-7200 controller units are shipped out with **1-1DOVI0** pre-installed.

The Direct Mobile Printing feature is activated by default and port 6310 on the controller is opened. For this reason, the following two documents are additionally included in the carton box from 2012 September mass-production units.

| Contents      | File                               | Explanation  |
|---------------|------------------------------------|--|
| Read Me       | PDF L                              | This document informs the customer that Port 6310 is opened by default.  |
|               | 45107532_ReadMeD<br>MP- EFIGSD.pdf | If a customer does not want to use the<br>Direct Mobile Printing feature, it is possible<br>to close port 6310 by disabling the Direct<br>Mobile Printing feature. |
| User Addendum | DMP_UA_PDFD.pdf                    | This document instructs the customer how<br>to configure the printer controller, and how<br>to use the Mobile Printing feature.                                    |

## Before installing 1-1DOVI0.ps

- As explained above, applying this patch will activate the Direct Mobile Printing and open port 6310 on the controller. If the customer does not want to leave port 6310 open, deactivate the Direct Mobile Printing feature from the *Configure* menu. This action will close the 6310 port.
- 2. The following prerequisites must be installed in the order specified before the **1-1DOVI0.ps** patch is installed:



Date: 15-Nov-12

No.: RD081089

- 1-16OVJ9.ps
- 1-17LVX9.ps
- 1-1E4OMH.ps
- 3. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 4. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch, which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

## Patch Update Procedure

- 1. Extract **D5027770.exe** until you get the **1-1DOVI0.ps** file.
- 2. Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 3. Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file **1-1DOVI0.ps** to the **Direct** connection.
- 4. Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 5. From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Shut down -> Reboot System.
- 6. Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 7. Verify that the System Updates Log section contains the patch number 1-1DOVIO.
- 8. After the patch update has been finished, print the attached PDF file "*User Addendum: Direct Mobile Printing*" and give it to your customer.

### **Reference Information:**

### **1. Configuring Direct Mobile Printing**

### 1-1. Fiery print controller Setup

Before using Direct Mobile Printing, configure the following settings in Fiery print controller Setup:

• Server > Jobs:

- Enable Printed Queue: Select

- Network > Protocol > TCP/IP > Security:
  - Specify ports to enable or Enable Port Filtering: Select
  - Available Ports > 5353 (Multicast DNS): Select

RICOH

Date: 15-Nov-12

No.: RD081089

- Network > Services > Web: - Enable IPP: Select
- Network > Services > Bonjour: - Enable Bonjour: Select
- Printer > General:
  - Publish Print Queue: Select

Make sure that the E-7200 settings are configured as specified. If these settings are changed, Direct Mobile Printing will not work. For more information about using Fiery print controller Setup, see *Configuration and Setup* in the documentation set that accompanies the E-7200.

### 1-2. Additional requirements

In addition, observe the following configuration requirements:

- If Direct Mobile Printing is running on multiple Fiery print controllers, be sure to assign a distinct Bonjour name to each Fiery print controller.
- User authentication problems will result if two or more Fiery print controllers share the same name.
- Make sure that the Fiery print controller is connected to a wireless access point on the network.
- Make sure that supported mobile devices are connected to the same wireless network as the Fiery print controller.

### 2. Using Direct Mobile Printing

After you install Direct Mobile Printing, allow approximately 1 minute for supported mobile devices to refresh communication with the Fiery print controller. At the end of this time, the Fiery print controller appears in the list of available printers on the mobile device.

Users can now send print jobs to the Fiery print controller from supported mobile devices.

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3  |                 | Date: 30-Nov-12 |           | 12       | No.: RD081090a |                   |
|--|-----------------|-----------------|-----------|----------|----------------|-------------------|
| Subject: The replacement procedure for the parts inside the toner hopper unit (Toner supply unit and toner hopper duct unit) |                 |                 | e<br>nit) | Preparec | l by: Chil     | hiro Shimaji      |
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/P Tech Service Dept.   |                 |                 |           |          |                |                   |
| Classification:  | Troubleshooting | ] Part info     | orma      | tion     | Action         | n required        |
|  | Mechanical      | ] Electrica     | al        |          | Servic         | e manual revision |
|  | Paper path      | ] Transm        | t/rec     | eive     | Retrof         | fit information   |
|  | Product Safety  | ] Other (       |           | )        | 🛛 Tier 2       |                   |

This RTB contains the replacement procedures for the cyan/magenta toner supply unit, and toner hopper duct unit.

**IMPORTANT:** Make sure to follow this procedure when replacing these parts, as the **harnesses must be wired correctly.** Otherwise, PCB: CNB may be damaged if the harnesses are not wired correctly and damaged.

## **Replacement Procedure for the Cyan Toner Supply Unit**

- 1. Remove the toner hopper unit from the machine.
- 2. Remove the stay from the toner hopper unit ( $\Re \times 2$ ).



3. Remove the connectors (x3) and the clamp (x1).



| RICOH       | Technical Bulletin | PAGE: 2/13     |
|-------------|--------------------|----------------|
| Model: V-C3 | Date: 30-Nov-12    | No.: RD081090a |

4. Remove the connector (x1), screws (3), snap ring (1), and guide shaft (x1).







Toner supply tube

6. Remove the two harness connectors from the CNB board (#286, 287).



7. Remove the clamps (x3) and rest the end of the harness on top of the hopper duct, as shown.





No.: RD081090a

- 8. Remove the cyan toner supply unit.
- 9. Install a new cyan toner supply unit.

#### **IMPORTANT:**

- Make sure to reattach the CNB harness connectors [1] and clamps [2], [3], [4] in the order shown in the photos (#1-4).
- Make sure to fasten clamps [2] and [3] in the positions shown in the photo. Clamp [2] should be below the top bind, and clamp [3] should be above the other bind, as shown.





Make sure to wire the harness behind the tube and in front of the screw. If you
wired the harness around the screw as shown in the "Incorrect" photo, the screw
head may damage and short the harness.





Incorrect





Model: V-C3

Date: 30-Nov-12

No.: RD081090a

• Close the clamp at the lower end of the cyan toner hopper unit so that the binds are in the positions shown in the photo.



## Correct

The clamp comes between the binds.



Incorrect Both binds are located below the clamp.



| RICOH       |  |
|-------------|--|
| Model: V-C3 |  |

Date: 30-Nov-12

No.: RD081090a

 Before you attach the bracket, make sure to push the harness up slightly and rest it on top of the CNB board, so that it does not get pinched between the edge of the bracket and another part.

## Correct



### Incorrect

(The harness is resting on top of the toner hopper unit gear)



### Incorrect

(The harness is pinched between the edge of the bracket and the surrounding part)





| RICOH       | Technical <b>B</b> | ulletin         | PAGE: 6/13     |
|-------------|--------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Model: V-C3 |                    | Date: 30-Nov-12 | No.: RD081090a |

## **Replacement Procedure for the Magenta Toner Supply Unit**

- 1. Remove the toner hopper unit from the machine.
- 2. Remove the stay from the toner hopper unit ( $\Re \times 2$ ).



3. Remove the five harness connectors (#280, 282, 283, 284, 285) and the clamp from the CNB board.



4. Remove the screw (x1) from the CNB board bracket.



5. Lay down a sheet of paper over the toner supply unit gear, as shown in the photo in step 7.

Note: This is to prevent the gear from damaging the harness in step 7.

|--|

Date: 30-Nov-12

No.: RD081090a

6. Slide the CNB board bracket to the right.



7. Remove the bracket, rotate it upside down and to the right, and then place it on the sheet of paper as shown.



8. Remove the connector (x1), screws (x3), snap ring (x1), and guide shaft (x1).







Toner supply tube

|--|

Date: 30-Nov-12

No.: RD081090a

10. Install a new magenta toner supply unit.

#### **IMPORTANT:**

• When you install the CNB board, make sure to attach the binds and clamps in the positions shown in this photo:



Incorrect

Correct



 Before you attach the bracket, make sure to push the harness up slightly and rest it on top of the CNB board, so that it does not get pinched between the edge of the bracket and another part.

## Correct



## Incorrect

(The harness is resting on top of the toner hopper unit gear)





Date: 30-Nov-12

No.: RD081090a

## Incorrect

(The harness is pinched between the edge of the bracket and the surrounding part)





| RICOH       | Technical B | ulletin         | PAGE: 10/13    |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Model: V-C3 |             | Date: 30-Nov-12 | No.: RD081090a |

## **Replacement Procedure for the Toner Hopper Duct**

- 1. Remove the toner hopper unit from the machine.
- 2. Remove the stay from the toner hopper unit ( $\Re \times 2$ ).



3. Remove the two harness connectors (#286, 287) from the CNB board.



4. Remove the clamps (x3) and hang the free end of the harness over the hopper duct, as shown.



| RICOH       | Technical B | ulletin         | PAGE: 11/13    |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Model: V-C3 |             | Date: 30-Nov-12 | No.: RD081090a |
|             |             |                 |                |



6. Remove the toner supply tube from the black toner supply unit ( $3 \times 3$ ).



- 7. Replace the toner hopper duct.
  - **IMPORTANT:** When you attach the toner hopper duct, always make sure to lay the harness **over the toner hopper duct** and hold it in place as shown. If the harness is under the toner hopper duct, it will get damaged from being pinched.



# Technical Bulletin

PAGE: 12/13

Model: V-C3

## Date: 30-Nov-12

No.: RD081090a

## Correct

The harness hangs over the hopper duct



The harness is under the hopper duct, and gets pinched between the hopper duct and toner hopper unit.





### **IMPORTANT:**

 Before you attach the bracket, make sure to push the harness up slightly and rest it on top of the CNB board, so that it does not get pinched between the edge of the bracket and another part.

### Correct



### Incorrect

(The harness is resting on top of the toner hopper unit gear)





Date: 30-Nov-12

No.: RD081090a

## Incorrect

(The harness is pinched between the edge of the bracket and the surrounding part)





# Technical Bulletin

| Model: Model V-C3                                     |                 | Dat                 | ate: 11-Dec-12       |      | No.: RD081091 |                    |
|---|-----------------|---------------------|----------------------|------|---------------|--------------------|
| Subject: Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (2012_Dec)    |                 |                     | Prepared by: C.Tsuji |      |               |                    |
| From: PP Solution Support Sec., PP Tech Service Dept. |                 |                     |                      |      |               |                    |
| Classification:                                       | Troubleshooting | Part info           | ormat                | tion | Action        | n required         |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrica           | al                   |      | Servic        | ce manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | 🗌 Transm            | it/rec               | eive | Retrof        | fit information    |
|   | Product Safety  | $\boxtimes$ Other ( |                      | )    | Tier 2        |                    |

This RTB is the release note for set of patches (5 patches in total) for Color Controller E-7200 System version 1.0.

#### Files included in this release:

| Folder Name |     |    | File Name   | File Size |
|-------------|-----|----|-------------|-----------|
|             |     | 01 | 1-1F2H7U.ps | 307 KB    |
|             |     | 02 | 1-1F4JPG.ps | 1.47 MB   |
| D5027771    | 1st | 03 | 1-1FS81V.ps | 6.09 MB   |
|             |     | 04 | 1-1GAS33.ps | 9.05 MB   |
|             |     | 05 | 1-1GJGUR.ps | 3.59 MB   |

#### Important Note:

Keep the order of patches to be applied as shown in the table above.

If some of the patches was not applied or was not applied in the indicated order by mistake, then system software re-installation is required for recovery.

#### Issue(s) addressed with this release:

- Print position is moved when a blank page is inserted before the first page.
- Load A4 LEF paper request is displayed, even though paper is available in the tray.
- Scan to SMB fails when Windows Live ID is installed on a Windows 7 PC.
- Unable to send Scan data to the Mac OS X 10.7 share location.
- Some characters are not printed for a particular file.

#### Prerequisite(s):

The following prerequisites must be installed in the order specified before these patches are installed:

- 1-16OVJ9.ps
- 1-17LVX9.ps
- 1-18R20T.ps
- 1-19UI8W.ps
- 1-1A6MX9.ps (Included in April 2012 Package)
- 1-1BZKDQ.ps (Included in April 2012 Package)
- 1-1A240J.ps (Included in May 2012 Package)
- 1-1CGCOU.ps (Included in May 2012 Package)
- 1-1CT7KB.ps (Included in May 2012 Package)
- 1-1D4QD0.ps (Included in May 2012 Package)
- 1-1DO46D.ps (Included in May 2012 Package)
- 1-1DFA7F.ps (Included in May 2012 Package)

| Model: Model V-C3 | Date: 11-Dec-12 | No.: RD081091 |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------|
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------|

These patches are not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.

In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

- You should keep installing order when the patch will be installed. If there is a patch missing, follow the instructions in that patch's Release Note to install it.
- In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

#### Preparation before installation:

1. Extract D5027771.exe .

RICOH

2. Check that 1st folder which consists of 5 patches is created. (Refer to the table on the top of this RTB.)

#### Patch Update Procedure:

- 1. With Command Workstation, import the patch to the "Direct" queue one by one with the following order.
  - \* Whenever you install each patch, be sure to reboot / restart. From Command Workstation, choose Server -> Reboot Server, or from the fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.
  - \* Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
  - \* Please note that frequency of reboot / restart is different with each patch.

| Order | File Name   | Import to    | Import to Waiting time after importing <b>each</b> patch. |   |
|-------|-------------|--------------|---|---|
| 1     | 1-1F2H7U.ps | Direct Queue | 60 seconds  | 0 |
| 2     | 1-1F4JPG.ps | Direct Queue | 60 seconds  | 0 |
| 3     | 1-1FS81V.ps | Direct Queue | 60 seconds  | 0 |
| 4     | 1-1GAS33.ps | Direct Queue | 60 seconds  | 0 |
| 5     | 1-1GJGUR.ps | Direct Queue | 60 seconds  | 1 |

2. Please wait until the Fiery has come to idle after the last reboot/restart.

3. Print out the configuration page.

4. Verify the System Updates Log section. It should show the patch names in the installed order.

# Technical Bulletin

Reissued:27-Feb-13 Model: Model V-C3

Date: 22-Feb-13

No.: RD081092a

#### **RTB Reissue**

The items in *bold italics* were corrected or added.

| Subject: Parts number of Exit unit was changed for preventing the fusing gear damage |                   | Prepared by: Chihiro Shimaji |      |                         |
|--|-------------------|------------------------------|------|-------------------------|
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/P Tech Service Dept.                               |                   |                              |      |                         |
| Classification:  | ☑ Troubleshooting | Part informat                | tion | Action required         |
|  | Mechanical        | Electrical                   |      | Service manual revision |
|  | Paper path        | Transmit/rec                 | eive | Retrofit information    |
|  | Product Safety    | 🗌 Other (                    | )    | 🛛 Tier 2                |

### **SYMPTOM**

- JAM 14 (Fusing Ex Sn: Late), JAM 19 (Dup Ent Sn:Late), or JAM 64 (Fusing Ex Sn:Lag) occurs
- Noise is generated in the paper exit unit
- · Rust powder from the fusing gears is scattered in the area under the fusing unit

## CAUSE

Lower durability in some decurler rollers may damage the ball bearings. As a result, if the machine is used in this condition, the fusing gear (GEAR - 20Z) may also break.



Reissued:27-Feb-13

| Model: Model V-C3 | Date: 22-Feb-13 | No.: RD081092a |
|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|
|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|

## SOLUTION

#### **Production line:**

The shape of the ball bearing for the decurler roller was changed to improve the durability of the roller.

| Old part | New part | Description     | Q'ty | Int | Note |
|----------|----------|-----------------|------|-----|------|
| number   | number   |                 |      |     |      |
| D0817001 | D0817003 | Paper Exit Unit | 1-1  | X/O | -    |
| D0817050 | D0817049 | Roller:Decura   | 1-1  | X/X | -    |



#### Note:

The rear bracket attached to the decurler roller (shown below in red) was also changed, but cannot be replaced individually in the field.



### In the field:

Replace the paper exit unit with the modified part (P/N D0817003).

### **CUT-IN SERIAL NUMBERS**

| Model                 | Destination | Code          | Serial Number           |
|-----------------------|-------------|---------------|-------------------------|
| Aficio MP C6501/C7501 | NA/LA       | D08117/D08217 | V7621100001/V7721100001 |
| Aficio MP C6501/C7501 | TWN         | D08119/D08219 | V7621110001/V7722120001 |
| Aficio MP C7501       | CHN         | D08221        | V7721120001             |
| Aficio MP C6501/C7501 | EU          | D08127/D08227 | V7621120001/V7721130001 |
| Aficio MP C6501/C7501 | AA          | D08129/D08229 | V7621230001/V7721140001 |



Model: V-C3

Date: 12-Mar-13

No.: RD081093

| Subject: Parts Information (ADF: Transport belt unit)  |   |               | Prepared by: Chihiro Shimaji |  |  |
|--|---|---------------|------------------------------|--|--|
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/P Tech Service Dept. |   |               |                              |  |  |
| Classification:  | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Other ()</li> </ul> | Part informat | tion<br>eive                 | <ul> <li>Action required</li> <li>Service manual revision</li> <li>Retrofit information</li> </ul> |  |

| Old part | New part | Description               | Note |
|----------|----------|---------------------------|------|
| number   | number   |                           |      |
| -        | D4120331 | TRANSPORT BELT UNIT:ASS'Y | -    |

As per field request, the following part was newly added as a service part



Model: D014/D015

Date: 18-Mar-13

No.: RD081094

| Subject: Harness | behind the toner hopper unit |                  |                         |
|------------------|------------------------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| Classification:  | Troubleshooting              | Part information | Action required         |
|                  | Mechanical                   | Electrical       | Service manual revision |
|                  | Paper path                   | Transmit/receive | Retrofit information    |
|                  | Product Safety               | Other ()         |                         |

### SYMPTOM

The CNB board (P/N: D0145440) is damaged. **Note:** In the worst cases, the board may emit smoke.

## CAUSE

The estimated cause is a short circuit in the bundled harness for the CNB board.

The bundled harness [A] for the CNB board is pushed too far inside the machine, and ends up positioned incorrectly (behind the screw [B] on the magenta PCU fan motor). In some cases, the harness covering might be cut. If the exposed area touches the screw head, a short circuit occurs, which damages the CNB board.

#### Note:

It was not defined where the harness covering was cut. It was assumed that the harness covering might be cut by the edge of the screw head while replacing the toner supply unit and/or toner hopper unit duct.



#### Note:

Whenever you replace one of the toner hoppers or toner hopper duct, make sure that **the harness is wired correctly** as explained in **RTB #RD081090a**.

Model: D014/D015

Date: 18-Mar-13

No.: RD081094

### Countermeasure

### **Production line of the PCB: CNB:**

The CNB board was modified so that the fuse will blow if a short circuit occurs, preventing any damage that could result in smoke emission.

#### In the field:

- Update the Engine Firmware (1.55:01 for C2/Ver.1.10:06 for C3).
- Replace the CNB board with the modified one (new P/N: D0149453).
- Check the wiring position of the harness.

#### Note:

After installing the Engine Firmware, CNB board damage is indicated by an SC.

### Replacement procedure for the CNB board

- 1. Remove the toner hopper unit from the machine.
- 2. Remove the stay from the toner hopper unit ( $\Re \times 2$ ).





### **IMPORTANT:**

• Before you attach the stay, make sure to push the harness up slightly and rest it on top of the CNB board, so that it does not get pinched between the edge of the stay and another part.



Model: D014/D015

Date: 18-Mar-13

No.: RD081094

Correct



### Incorrect

The harness is resting on top of the toner hopper unit gear.



## Incorrect

The harness is pinched between the edge of the stay and the surrounding part.





**PAGE: 4/4** 

Model: D014/D015

Date: 18-Mar-13

No.: RD081094

## Check points for the wiring position of the harness





Make sure to fasten clamps **[A]** and **[B]** in the positions shown in the photo. Clamp **[A]** should be below the top bind, and clamp **[B]** should be above the other bind, as shown.



Make sure to wire the harness **behind** the tube and **in front of** the screw. If you wired the harness around the screw as shown in the "Incorrect" photo, the screw head may damage and short the harness.







Make sure to attach the binds and clamps in the positions shown in this photo.

Correct The clamp comes between the binds.





Model: Model V-C3

Date: 10-Jun-13

No.: RD081095

| Subject: Parts Registration (PCU) |                              |               | Prepared by: Chihiro Shimaji |                         |  |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| From: 1st Tech S                  | ervice Sect. MFP/P Tech Serv | rice Dept.    |                              |                         |  |
| Classification:                   | Troubleshooting              | Part informat | tion                         | Action required         |  |
|                                   | 🗌 Mechanical                 | Electrical    |                              | Service manual revision |  |
|                                   | Paper path                   | Transmit/rec  | eive                         | Retrofit information    |  |
|                                   | Product Safety               | 🗌 Other (     | )                            | 🖂 Tier 2                |  |

### 36. PCU 3 (D014/D015)

| New part number | Description                   | Note      |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|-----------|
| D0142360        | GUIDE PLATE:BLADE:APPLY:COLOR | New Index |
| D0142262        | FRAME:PCU:COLOR:ASS'Y         | New Index |
| D0142290        | BRACKET:BLADE:ASS'Y           | New Index |

**Change:** The parts in the table were added. **Reason:** To meet requests from the field.

### D0142360 (GUIDE PLATE: BLADE: APPLY: COLOR)



#### D0142262 (FRAME: PCU: COLOR: ASS'Y)







Model: Model V-C3

Date: 10-Jun-13

No.: RD081095

### D0142290 (BRACKET: BLADE: ASS'Y)



# Technical Bulletin

| Model: General Da   |                           |           | Dat     | e: 26-Feb- | -13             | No.: RGene060     |
|---|---------------------------|-----------|---------|------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| Subject: The System Software reloading error occurrs when using HDD(D6504004/D0295795/D0295796) |                           |           | Prepare | d by: Chil | hiro Shimaji    |                   |
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/P Tech Service Dept.  |                           |           |         |            |                 |                   |
| Classification:   | ☑ Troubleshooting         | Part info | ormat   | tion       | Action          | n required        |
|   | Mechanical     Electrical |           | al      |            | Servic          | e manual revision |
| Paper path     Transmit/  |                           | it/rec    | eive    | Retrof     | fit information |                   |
|   | Product Safety            | Other (   |         | )          | 🛛 Tier 2        |                   |

#### SYMPTOM

A formatting time-out error occurs when reloading the System software using an Ethernet network cable after replacing the HDD with one of the following:

D6504004 (160GB), D0295795 (500GB), D0295796 (500GB)

**Note:** Even under these conditions, there are cases in which the error does not occur. If it does not occur, the HDD can be used without any functional issues. However, the original storage capacity of the HDD (see CAUSE below) will appear on the Configuration Sheet / CWS (Command WorkStation).

### CAUSE

The usable storage capacity of the HDD mentioned above was not "capped" to 80GB/160GB before the drives were registered as Service parts.

- Note:
  - Capping has been performed on HDDs installed in machines at the factory since the beginning of production.
- The D0295795 and D0295796 HDDs can be used on At/Ap-C2/C2.5, Mt-C4, because the specified HDD size of these machines is 500GB.

### SOLUTION

#### Service parts:

The usable storage capacity has been capped.

#### In the field:

If the symptom occurs, replace the HDD with the following:

|                | Model                        | Code       | Specified value | New P/N         |
|----------------|------------------------------|------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| V-C1 EFI       | Color Controller E-7000      | D815-41/42 | 80GB            | D5021020        |
| V-C2 EFI       | Color Controller E-7100      | D380       |                 | (clipped from   |
| V-C3 EFI       | Color Controller E-7200      | D502       |                 | 500GB to 80GB)  |
| At/Ap-C1 EFI   | Color Controller E-3000/5000 | G878/889   |                 |                 |
| At/Ap-C2 EFI   | Color Controller E-3100/5100 | D479/480   |                 |                 |
| At/Ap-C2.5 EFI | Color Controller E-3200/5200 | D557/558   |                 |                 |
| B-C3 EFI       | Printer Controller EB-135    | G847       |                 |                 |
| At/Ap-C3 EFI   | Color Controller E-3300/5300 | D650/D651  | 160GB           | D6501020        |
|                |                              |            |                 | (clipped from   |
|                |                              |            |                 | 500GB to 160GB) |

#### PAGE: 1/2

| Model: V-C3   |                           | Date: 30-Aug-13  |                    | ·13                        | No.: RD081096        |            |
|---|---------------------------|------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|------------|
| Subject: Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-1FO2MC.ps) |                           |                  | 5)                 | Prepared by: Chisato Tsuji |                      |            |
| From: PP Solution Support Sec., PP Tech Service Dept. |                           |                  |                    |                            |                      |            |
| Classification:                                       | Troubleshooting           | Part info        | ] Part information |                            | Action               | n required |
|   | Mechanical     Electrical |                  |                    | Service manual revision    |                      |            |
|   | Paper path                | Transmit/receive |                    | eive                       | Retrofit information |            |
|   | Product Safety            | 🛛 Other (        |                    | )                          | Tier 2               |            |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-1FO2MC**.ps for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | lssue(s)   |
|-------------|--|
| 1-1FO2MC.ps | Development counter behavior might be incorrect, when a job is printed from Document Server. |

## Before installing 1-1FO2MC.ps

- 1. The following prerequisites must be installed in the order specified before the **1-1FO2MC.ps** patch is installed:
  - 1-17LVX9.ps

RICOH

- 1-18R20T.ps
- 2. Do NOT install any of the following patch(es) after installing the **1-1FO2MC.ps** patch. If you must install any of the patch(es) below, do so before installing the **1-1FO2MC.ps** patch:
  - 1-19UI8W.ps
  - 1-1A6MXU.ps
  - 1-1A240J.ps
  - 1-1CGCOU.ps
  - 1-1DFA7F.ps
  - 1-1F4JPG.ps
- 3. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 4. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

| RICOH T     | echnical <b>B</b> ulletin | <b>PAGE: 2/2</b> |
|-------------|---------------------------|------------------|
| Model: V-C3 | Date: 30-Aug-13           | No.: RD081096    |

## Patch Update Procedure

- 1. Extract the **D5027776.exe** until you get the **1-1FO2MC.ps** file.
- 2. Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 3. Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file **1-1FO2MC.ps** to the **Direct** connection.
- 4. Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 5. From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Shut down -> Reboot System.
- 6. Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 7. Verify that the System Updates Log section contains the patch number 1-1FO2MC.
### PAGE: 1/2

| Model: V-C3       |                                |           | Dat    | e: 30-Aug- | ·13      | No.: RD081097     |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|-----------|--------|------------|----------|-------------------|
| Subject: Patch Re | elease for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-1   | HOJQY.ps  | 5)     | Prepared   | d by: Ch | isato Tsuji       |
| From: PP Solutio  | n Support Sec., PP Tech Servio | ce Dept.  |        |            |          |                   |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting                | Part info | ormat  | tion       | Action   | n required        |
|                   | Mechanical                     | Electric  | al     |            | Servic   | e manual revision |
|                   | Paper path                     | 🗌 Transm  | it/rec | eive       | Retro    | fit information   |
|                   | Product Safety                 | 🛛 Other ( |        | )          | Tier 2   |                   |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-1HOJQY**.ps for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | lssue(s)   |
|-------------|--|
| 1-1HOJQY.ps | Characters start losing when a particular PCL file is printed. |

## Before installing 1-1HOJQY.ps

- 1. The following prerequisites must be installed in the order specified before the **1-1HOJQY.ps** patch is installed:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps

- 1-17LVX9.ps
- 1-182O6B.ps
- 2. Do NOT install any of the following patch(es) after installing the **1-1HOJQY.ps** patch. If you must install any of the patch(es) below, do so before installing the **1-1HOJQY.ps** patch:
  - 1-182Q0D.ps
  - 1-1CT781.ps
  - 1-1DO46D.ps
  - 1-1E8X3I.ps
  - 1-1GJGUR.ps
- 3. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 4. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

| RICOH T     | echnical <b>B</b> ulletin | <b>PAGE: 2/2</b> |
|-------------|---------------------------|------------------|
| Model: V-C3 | Date: 30-Aug-13           | No.: RD081097    |

## Patch Update Procedure

- 1. Extract the **D5027777.exe** until you get the **1-1HOJQY.ps** file.
- 2. Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 3. Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file **1-1HOJQY.ps** to the **Direct** connection.
- 4. Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 5. From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Shut down -> Reboot System.
- 6. Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 7. Verify that the System Updates Log section contains the patch number **1-1HOJQY**.

### PAGE: 1/2

| Model: V-C3       |                               |           | Dat    | :e: 30-Aug- | ·13       | No.: RD081098     |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|-----------|--------|-------------|-----------|-------------------|
| Subject: Patch Re | elease for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-1) | HIFKI.ps) |        | Prepared    | d by: Chi | isato Tsuji       |
| From: PP Solutio  | n Support Sec., PP Tech Servi | ce Dept.  |        |             |           |                   |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting               | Part info | ormat  | tion        | Action    | n required        |
|                   | Mechanical                    | Electrica | al     |             | Servic    | e manual revision |
|                   | Paper path                    | 🗌 Transmi | it/rec | eive        | Retro     | fit information   |
|                   | Product Safety                | 🛛 Other ( |        | )           | Tier 2    |                   |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-1HIFKI**.ps for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | lssue(s)  |
|-------------|---|
| 1-1HIFKI.ps | Update Direct Mobile Printing for iOS6 compatibility. |

## Before installing 1-1HIFKI.ps

- 1. The following prerequisites must be installed in the order specified before the **1-1HIFKI.ps** patch is installed:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps

- 1-17LVX9.ps
- 1-1DOVI0.ps
- 2. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 3. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

| RICOH T     | echnical <b>B</b> ulletin | PAGE: 2/2     |
|-------------|---------------------------|---------------|
| Model: V-C3 | Date: 30-Aug-13           | No.: RD081098 |

## Patch Update Procedure

- 1. Extract the **D5027778.exe** until you get the **1-1HIFKI.ps** file.
- 2. Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 3. Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file **1-1HIFKI.ps** to the **Direct** connection.
- 4. Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 5. From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Shut down -> Reboot System.
- 6. Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 7. Verify that the System Updates Log section contains the patch number 1-1HIFKI.

### PAGE: 1/2

| Model: V-C3       |                               |           | Dat    | :e: 30-Aug- | 13       | No.: RD081099      |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|-----------|--------|-------------|----------|--------------------|
| Subject: Patch Re | elease for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-1  | IHGC7.ps) |        | Prepared    | d by: Ch | isato Tsuji        |
| From: PP Solutio  | n Support Sec., PP Tech Servi | ce Dept.  |        |             |          |                    |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting               | Part info | ormat  | tion        | Action   | n required         |
|                   | Mechanical                    | Electric  | al     |             | Servic   | ce manual revision |
|                   | Paper path                    | Transm    | it/rec | eive        | Retro    | fit information    |
|                   | Product Safety                | 🛛 Other ( |        | )           | Tier 2   |                    |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-1IHGC7.ps** for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | Issue(s)                        |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| 1-1IHGC7.ps | A patch to address error SC819. |

## Before installing 1-1IHGC7.ps

- 1. The following prerequisites must be installed in the order specified before the **1-1IHGC7.ps** patch is installed:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps

- 1-17LVX9.ps
- 2. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 3. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

| RICOH Teo   | chnical <b>B</b> ulletin | PAGE: 2/2     |
|-------------|--------------------------|---------------|
| Model: V-C3 | Date: 30-Aug-13          | No.: RD081099 |

## Patch Update Procedure

- 1. Extract the **D5027779.exe** until you get the **1-1IHGC7.ps** file.
- 2. Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 3. Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file **1-1IHGC7.ps** to the **Direct** connection.
- 4. Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 5. From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Shut down -> Reboot System.
- 6. Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 7. Verify that the System Updates Log section contains the patch number 1-1IHGC7.

# Technical Bulletin

### **PAGE: 1/2**

| Model: V-C3       |  |            | Dat        | :e: 19-Sep | -13        | No.: RD081100     |
|-------------------|--|------------|------------|------------|------------|-------------------|
| Subject: Light im | age on output  |            |            | Prepared   | d by: Υ. ι | Jrushihara        |
| From: 1st Tech S  | Service Sect., MFP/P Tech Ser                              | vice Dept. |            |            |            |                   |
| Classification:   | fication: Troubleshooting Part information Action required |            | n required |            |            |                   |
|                   | 🗌 Mechanical   | Electric   | al         |            | Servic     | e manual revision |
|                   | Paper path   | 🗌 Transm   | it/rec     | eive       | Retro      | fit information   |
|                   | Product Safety   | Other (    |            | )          | 🛛 Tier 2   |                   |

## SYMPTOM

The following may occur just after the PCB: CNB (P/N D0149453) is replaced.

- 1. Magenta areas appear light
- 2. SC361/SC411 occurs

## CAUSE

The connector for the magenta supply clutch (sub hopper clutch) is removed from CN284 or CN285 too strongly. As a result, the harness is damaged.



Layout



|--|

Date: 19-Sep-13

No.: RD081100

## SOLUTION

- If the symptom occurs, replace the MAGNETIC CLUTCH: TONER SUPPLY UNIT:ASS'Y (G1783186) or TONER SUPPLY UNIT:ASS'Y (D0143359).
- Always make sure to remove the clutch connectors **gently**.

Model: Model V-C3

Date: 19-Sep-13

No.: RD081101

| Subject: SC324~327/445/455 occurrence                  |                   |               | Prepared by: Yuji Urushihara |                         |  |
|--|-------------------|---------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| From: 1st Tech Service Sect., MFP/P Tech Service Dept. |                   |               |                              |                         |  |
| Classification:  | ☐ Troubleshooting | Part informat | ion                          | Action required         |  |
|  | 🗌 Mechanical      | Electrical    |                              | Service manual revision |  |
|  | Paper path        | Transmit/rec  | eive                         | Retrofit information    |  |
|  | Product Safety    | 🗌 Other (     | )                            | 🗌 Tier 2                |  |

## SYMPTOM

One of the following SC errors occurs: SC324–327 (Development Motor Error (K/M/C/Y)) SC445 (Image Transfer Motor Error) SC455 (PTR Motor Error)

## CAUSE

The toner is shipped and/or stored under high-temperature conditions (50C or higher), which melts the additive (wax) in the toner. As a result, the toner tends to stick to the parts along its supply/transport path.

**Note:** The photo below was taken after the PCDU drum was removed, and shows waste toner that had built up inside the cleaning area.





Model: Model V-C3

Date: 19-Sep-13

No.: RD081101

## SOLUTION

Replace the following parts:

- PCU
- Developer
- Toner (see cut-in lot number below)
- Toner Hopper Unit
- ITB Cleaning Unit

### PAGE: 1/2

| Model: V-C3   |                 |           | Date: 21-Jan-14 |                       |        | No.: RD081102     |
|---|-----------------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|--------|-------------------|
| Subject: Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-1IYB7X.ps) |                 |           |                 | Prepared by: Y. Okano |        |                   |
| From: PP Solution Support Sec., PP Tech Service Dept. |                 |           |                 |                       |        |                   |
| Classification:                                       | Troubleshooting | Part info | orma            | tion                  | Action | n required        |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrica | al              |                       | Servic | e manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transm    | it/rec          | eive                  | Retrof | fit information   |
|   | Product Safety  | 🛛 Other ( |                 | )                     | Tier 2 |                   |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-11YB7X.ps** for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | Issue(s)   |
|-------------|--|
| 1-1IYB7X.ps | <ul> <li>Command WorkStation connection is lost while processing a<br/>particular file.</li> </ul> |

## Before installing 1-1IYB7X.ps

- 1. Known issues listed below, read before installing **1-1IYB7X.ps** patch:
  - None.

- 2. The following prerequisites must be installed in the order specified before the **1-1IYB7X.ps** patch is installed:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps
  - 1-17LVX9.ps
  - 1-1CT7KB.ps
  - 1-1D4QD0.ps
  - 1-1DMNS5.ps
- Do <u>NOT</u> install any of the following patch(es) <u>after</u> installing the 1-1IYB7X.ps patch. If you must install any of the patch(es) below, do so <u>before</u> installing the 1-1IYB7X.ps patch:
  - 1-1BZJBO.ps
- 4. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 5. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

Model: V-C3

Date: 21-Jan-14

No.: RD081102

- 1. Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 2. Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file **1-1IYB7X.ps** to the Direct connection.
- 3. Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 4. From Command WorkStation, choose Server, Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery, Restart System.
- 5. Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 6. Verify that the **System Updates Log** section contains the patch number **1-1IYB7X**.

### PAGE: 1/2

| Model: V-C3 Dat                                       |                               |                 | e: 21-Jan-            | 14   | No.: RD081103 |                   |
|---|-------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|------|---------------|-------------------|
| Subject: Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-1F3CRV.ps) |                               |                 | Prepared by: Y. Okano |      |               |                   |
| From: PP Solution                                     | n Support Sec., PP Tech Servi | ce Dept.        |                       |      |               |                   |
| Classification:                                       | Troubleshooting               | Part info       | ormat                 | tion | Action        | n required        |
|   | Mechanical                    | Electrica       | al                    |      | Servic        | e manual revision |
|   | Paper path                    | Transm          | it/rec                | eive | Retrof        | fit information   |
|   | Product Safety                | igtimes Other ( |                       | )    | Tier 2        |                   |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-1F3CRV.ps** for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | lssue(s)  |
|-------------|---|
| 1-1F3CRV.ps | - A generic Linux patch to update the Firebird version to 1.5.6.5026. |

## Before installing 1-1F3CRV.ps

- 1. Known issues listed below, read before installing **1-1F3CRV.ps** patch:
  - None.

- 2. The following prerequisites must be installed in the order specified before the **1-1F3CRV.ps** patch is installed:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps
  - 1-17LVX9.ps
- 3. Do <u>NOT</u> install any of the following patch(es) <u>after</u> installing the **1-1F3CRV.ps** patch. If you must install any of the patch(es) below, do so <u>before</u> installing the **1-1F3CRV.ps** patch:
  - None.
- 4. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 5. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

Model: V-C3

Date: 21-Jan-14

No.: RD081103

- 1. Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 2. Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file **1-1F3CRV.ps** to the Direct connection.
- 3. Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 4. From Command WorkStation, choose Server, Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery, Restart System.
- 5. Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 6. Verify that the **Update Info** section contains the patch number **1-1F3CRV**.

| Model: V-C3       |                                |           | Date: 21-Jan-14 |          |            | No.: RD081104     |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|-----------|-----------------|----------|------------|-------------------|
| Subject: Patch Re | elease for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-1.  | JHC4L.ps) |                 | Prepared | d by: Y. ( | Okano             |
| From: PP Solution | n Support Sec., PP Tech Servio | ce Dept.  |                 |          |            |                   |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting                | Part info | rmat            | tion     | Action     | required          |
|                   | Mechanical                     | Electrica | al              |          | Servic     | e manual revision |
|                   | Paper path                     | 🗌 Transmi | t/rec           | eive     | Retro      | fit information   |
|                   | Product Safety                 | 🛛 Other ( |                 | )        | Tier 2     |                   |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-1JHC4L.ps** for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | lssue(s)   |
|-------------|--|
| 1-1JHC4L.ps | - IE10 Compatibility patch: This patch will address an issue where launching Setup/Configure on Internet Explorer 10, the Setup/Configure window is blank. |

## Before installing 1-1JHC4L.ps

- 1. Known issues listed below, read before installing 1-1JHC4L.ps patch:
  - None.

- 2. The following prerequisites must be installed in the order specified before the **1-1JHC4L.ps** patch is installed:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps
  - 1-17LVX9.ps
- 3. Do <u>NOT</u> install any of the following patch(es) <u>after</u> installing the **1-1JHC4L.ps** patch. If you must install any of the patch(es) below, do so <u>before</u> installing the **1-1JHC4L.ps** patch:
  - None.
- 4. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 5. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

Model: V-C3

Date: 21-Jan-14

No.: RD081104

- 1. Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 2. Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file **1-1JHC4L.ps** to the Direct connection.
- 3. Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 4. From Command WorkStation, choose Server, Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery, Restart System.
- 5. Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 6. Verify that the **System Updates Log** section contains the patch number **1-1JHC4L**.

### **PAGE: 1/2**

| Model: V-C3   |                 |           | Date: 21-Jan-14 |                       |        | No.: RD081105     |
|---|-----------------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|--------|-------------------|
| Subject: Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-1K2N4F.ps) |                 |           |                 | Prepared by: Y. Okano |        |                   |
| From: PP Solution Support Sec., PP Tech Service Dept. |                 |           |                 |                       |        |                   |
| Classification:                                       | Troubleshooting | Part info | orma            | tion                  | Action | n required        |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrica | al              |                       | Servic | e manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transm    | it/rec          | eive                  | Retrof | fit information   |
|   | Product Safety  | 🛛 Other ( |                 | )                     | Tier 2 |                   |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-1K2N4F.ps** for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | Issue(s)  |
|-------------|---|
| 1-1K2N4F.ps | - Image alignment is incorrect for a specific VDP job when printed with |
|             | duplex setting.   |

## Before installing 1-1K2N4F.ps

- 1. Known issues listed below, read before installing 1-1K2N4F.ps patch:
  - None.

- 2. The following prerequisites must be installed in the order specified before the **1-1K2N4F.ps** patch is installed:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps
  - 1-17LVX9.ps
- Do <u>NOT</u> install any of the following patch(es) <u>after</u> installing the 1-1K2N4F.ps patch. If you must install any of the patch(es) below, do so <u>before</u> installing the 1-1K2N4F.ps patch:
  - None.
- 4. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 5. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

Model: V-C3

Date: 21-Jan-14

No.: RD081105

- 1. Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 2. Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file **1-1K2N4F.ps** to the Direct connection.
- 3. Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 4. From Command WorkStation, choose Server, Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery, Restart System.
- 5. Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 6. Verify that the **System Updates Log** section contains the patch number **1-1K2N4F**.

### PAGE: 1/2

| Model: V-C3   |                 |           | Date: 21-Jan-14       |      |        | No.: RD081106      |
|---|-----------------|-----------|-----------------------|------|--------|--------------------|
| Subject: Patch Release for E-7200 V.1.0 (1-1KK851.ps) |                 |           | Prepared by: Y. Okano |      |        |                    |
| From: PP Solution Support Sec., PP Tech Service Dept. |                 |           |                       |      |        |                    |
| Classification:                                       | Troubleshooting | Part info | ormat                 | tion | Action | n required         |
|   | Mechanical      | Electrica | al                    |      | Servic | ce manual revision |
|   | Paper path      | Transm    | it/rec                | eive | Retrot | fit information    |
|   | Product Safety  | 🛛 Other ( |                       | )    | Tier 2 |                    |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **1-1KK851.ps** for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File  | Issue(s)  |
|-------------|---|
| 1-1KK851.ps | - Validity period of the SSL authentication certificate was extended due to its expiration. |

## Before installing 1-1KK851.ps

- 1. Known issues listed below, read before installing 1-1KK851.ps patch:
  - None.

- 2. The following prerequisites must be installed in the order specified before the **1-1KK851.ps** patch is installed:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps
  - 1-17LVX9.ps
  - 1-1DOVI0.ps
  - 1-1JHC4L.ps
- Do <u>NOT</u> install any of the following patch(es) <u>after</u> installing the 1-1KK851.ps patch. If you must install any of the patch(es) below, do so <u>before</u> installing the 1-1KK851.ps patch:
  - 1-1E4OMH.ps
- 4. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 5. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

Model: V-C3

Date: 21-Jan-14

No.: RD081106

- 1. Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 2. Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file **1-1KK851.ps** to the Direct connection.
- 3. Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 4. From Command WorkStation, choose Server, Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery, Restart System.
- 5. Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 6. Verify that the **System Updates Log** section contains the patch number **1-1KK851**.

| Model: V-C3       |                                |           | Dat    | :e: 21-Jan- | 14         | No.: RD081107     |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|-----------|--------|-------------|------------|-------------------|
| Subject: Patch Re | elease for E-7200 V.1.0 (FIT   | 106369.ps | )      | Prepared    | d by: Y. ( | Okano             |
| From: PP Solutio  | n Support Sec., PP Tech Servio | ce Dept.  |        |             |            |                   |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting                | Part info | ormat  | tion        | Action     | required          |
|                   | Mechanical                     | Electrica | al     |             | Servic     | e manual revision |
|                   | Paper path                     | Transm    | it/rec | eive        | Retrof     | fit information   |
|                   | Product Safety                 | 🛛 Other ( |        | )           | Tier 2     |                   |

This RTB is the release note for Patch File **FIT106369.ps** for Color Controller E-7200 system version 1.0.

| Patch File   | Issue(s)                      |
|--------------|-------------------------------|
| FIT106369.ps | - Samba server upgrade patch. |

## Before installing FIT106369.ps

- 1. Known issues listed below, read before installing **FIT106369.ps** patch:
  - None.

- 2. The following prerequisites must be installed in the order specified before the **FIT106369.ps** patch is installed:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps
  - 1-17LVX9.ps
  - 1-1FS81V.ps
  - 1-1GAS33.ps
- 3. Do <u>NOT</u> install any of the following patch(es) <u>after</u> installing the **FIT106369.ps** patch. If you must install any of the patch(es) below, do so <u>before</u> installing the **FIT106369.ps** patch:
  - None.
- 4. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 5. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

Model: V-C3

Date: 21-Jan-14

No.: RD081107

- 1. Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 2. Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file **FIT106369.ps** to the Direct connection.
- 3. Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 4. From Command WorkStation, choose Server, Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery, Restart System.
- 5. Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 6. Verify that the **System Updates Log** section contains the patch number **FIT106369**.

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3  |   |  | Date: 03-Oct-14       |                               | No.: RD081108  |
|--|---|--|-----------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| Subject: Patch (FIT202723.ps) release notes for Color<br>Controller E-7200 System Software Version 1 |   |  | .0                    | Prepared by: (                | Chisato Tsuji  |
| From: PP Solution Support Sec. PP Tech Service Dept.   |   |  |                       |                               |  |
| Classification:  | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Product Safety</li> </ul> | □ Part info<br>□ Electric<br>□ Transm<br>☑ Other ( | ormat<br>al<br>it/rec | tion Ac<br>Se<br>eive Re<br>) | tion required<br>rvice manual revision<br>trofit information |

This RTB has been issued to announce the release notes on the patch "**FIT202723.ps**" for the Color Controller E-7200 **system software version 1.0**.

| Patch File   | Issue(s)  |
|--------------|---|
| FIT202723.ps | <ul> <li>iOS7 compatibility reference patch for E-7200.</li> <li>1) Jobs cannot be printed from an iOS 7 device with authentication enabled.</li> <li>2) RIP error occurs while processing some web pages.</li> </ul> |

### Before installing FIT202723.ps:

- 1. Known issues listed below, read before installing **FIT202723.ps** patch:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps
  - 1-17LVX9.ps
  - 1-1DOVI0.ps
- 2. The following prerequisite(s) must be installed in the order specified before installing FIT202723.ps:
  - 1-1HIFKI.ps
- 3. Do <u>NOT</u> install any of the following patch(es) after installing the **FIT202723.ps** patch. If you must install any of the patch(es) below, do so <u>before</u> installing the **FIT202723.ps** patch:
  - None
- 4. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 5. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

- 1 Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 2 Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file FIT202723.ps to the Direct queue.
- 3 Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 4 From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.
- 5 Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 6 Verify that the **System Updates Log** section contains the patch number **FIT202723**.

## Technical Bulletin

Reissued: 10-Nov-14

Date: 09-Oct-15

No.: RD081109a

### Model: V-C3 RTB Reissue

### The red-colored text in this RTB were changed.

|  |   | , and the second s |                       |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|---|--|-----------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Subject: Patch (FIT191304.ps) release notes for Color<br>Controller E-7200 System Software Version 1.0 |   |  | Prepared I            | by: Chisato Tsuji  |  |  |  |  |  |
| From: 3rd Tech Service Sec. PP Tech Service Dept.  |   |  |                       |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Classification:  | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Product Safety</li> </ul> | <ul> <li>Part information</li> <li>Electrical</li> <li>Transmit/rec</li> <li>Other (</li> </ul>  | tion [<br>cive [<br>) | Action required<br>Service manual revision<br>Retrofit information |  |  |  |  |  |

This RTB has been issued to announce the release notes on the patch "**FIT191304.ps**" for the Color Controller E-7200 **system software version 1.0**.

| Patch File   | Issue(s)  |
|--------------|---|
| FIT191304.ps | Scan to SMB fails to deliver the data to Windows 7 PC while printing a job. |

### Before installing FIT191304.ps:

- 1. Known issues listed below, read before installing **FIT191304.ps** patch:
  - None
- The following prerequisite(s) must be installed in the order specified before installing FIT191304.ps:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps
  - 1-17LVX9.ps
  - 1-1KFF4A.ps (deleted because this patch is not released for this model)
- 3. Do <u>NOT</u> install any of the following patch(es) after installing the **FIT191304.ps** patch. If you must install any of the patch(es) below, do so <u>before</u> installing the **FIT191304.ps** patch:
  - 1-1GAS33.ps
- 4. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 5. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

- 1 Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 2 Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file FIT191304.ps to the Direct queue.
- 3 Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 4 From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.
- 5 Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.



Reissued: 10-Nov-14

Model: V-C3 Date: 09-Oct-15 No.: RD081109a

6 Verify that the **System Updates Log** section contains the patch number **FIT191304**.

# Technical Bulletin

### **PAGE: 1/1**

| Model: V-C3  |   |  | Date: 09-Oct-14       |  | No.: RD081110                                       |
|--|---|--|-----------------------|--|---|
| Subject: Patch (FIT191295.ps) release notes for Color<br>Controller E-7200 System Software Version 1.0 |   |  | r<br>.0               | Prepared by: Ch                          | isato Tsuji   |
| From: 3rd Tech   | Service Sec. PP Tech Servic   | ce Dept.   |                       |  |   |
| Classification:  | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Product Safety</li> </ul> | <ul> <li>□ Part info</li> <li>□ Electric</li> <li>□ Transm</li> <li>○ Other (</li> </ul> | ormat<br>al<br>it/rec | tion Action<br>Servio<br>eive Retro<br>) | n required<br>ce manual revision<br>fit information |

This RTB has been issued to announce the release notes on the patch "**FIT191295.ps**" for the Color Controller E-7200 system software version 1.0.

| Patch File   | Issue(s)   |
|--------------|--|
| FIT191295.ps | Unable to save scanned document to Windows Distributed File System folder. |

### Before installing FIT191295.ps:

- 1. Known issues listed below, read before installing **FIT191295.ps** patch:
  - None
- 2. The following prerequisite(s) must be installed in the order specified before installing FIT191295.ps:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps
  - 1-17LVX9.ps
  - 1-1GAS33.ps
- 3. Do <u>NOT</u> install any of the following patch(es) after installing the **FIT191295.ps** patch. If you must install any of the patch(es) below, do so <u>before</u> installing the **FIT191295.ps** patch:
  - FIT191304.ps
- 4. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 5. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

- 1 Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 2 Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file FIT191295.ps to the Direct queue.
- 3 Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 4 From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.
- 5 Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 6 Verify that the **System Updates Log** section contains the patch number **FIT191295**.

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3  |   |  | Date: 09-Oct-14       |                       | No.: RD081111                    |   |
|--|---|--|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| Subject: Patch (FIT204556.ps) release notes for Color<br>Controller E-7200 System Software Version 1.0 |   |  | r<br>.0               | Prepared I            | by: Chi                          | sato Tsuji                                      |
| From: 3rd Tech Service Sec. PP Tech Service Dept.  |   |  |                       |                       |                                  |   |
| Classification:  | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Product Safety</li> </ul> | <ul> <li>□ Part info</li> <li>□ Electric</li> <li>□ Transm</li> <li>○ Other (</li> </ul> | ormat<br>al<br>it/rec | tion [<br>cive [<br>) | ] Action<br>] Servic<br>] Retrof | required<br>e manual revision<br>it information |

This RTB has been issued to announce the release notes on the patch "**FIT204556.ps**" for the Color Controller E-7200 system software version 1.0.

| Patch File   | Issue(s)   |
|--------------|--|
| FIT204556.ps | Unable to launch Configure window from WebTools on Windows/Mac OS<br>installed with Java 1.7u51. |

### Before installing FIT204556.ps:

- 1. Known issues listed below, read before installing **FIT204556.ps** patch:
  - None
- The following prerequisite(s) must be installed in the order specified before installing FIT204556.ps:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps
  - 1-17LVX9.ps
  - 1-1DOVI0.ps
- 3. Do <u>NOT</u> install any of the following patch(es) after installing the **FIT204556.ps** patch. If you must install any of the patch(es) below, do so <u>before</u> installing the **FIT204556.ps** patch:
  - 1-1KK851.ps
  - 1-1E4OMH.ps
- 4. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 5. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

- 1 Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 2 Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file FIT204556.ps to the Direct queue.
- 3 Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 4 From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.
- 5 Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 6 Verify that the **System Updates Log** section contains the patch number **FIT204556**.

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3  |   |  | Dat                    | Date: 20-Jan-15 No.: RD08111       |   |  |
|--|---|--|------------------------|------------------------------------|---|--|
| Subject: Patch (FIT100803187.ps) release notes for<br>Color Controller E-7200 System Software<br>Version 1.0 |   |  |                        | Prepared by: Ch                    | isato Tsuji   |  |
| From: 3rd Tech Service Sec. PP Tech Service Dept.  |   |  |                        |                                    |   |  |
| Classification:  | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Product Safety</li> </ul> | ☐ Part info<br>☐ Electric<br>☐ Transm<br>⊠ Other ( | ormai<br>al<br>iit/rec | tion Action<br>Servi<br>eive Retro | n required<br>ce manual revision<br>fit information |  |

This RTB has been issued to announce the release notes on the patch "**FIT100803187.ps**" for the Color Controller E-7200 **system software version 1.0**.

| Patch File      | Issue(s)   |
|-----------------|--|
| FIT100803187.ps | Server Configuration page supports 12-digit patch ID display |

### Before installing FIT100803187.ps:

- 1. Known issues listed below, read before installing **FIT100803187.ps** patch:
  - None
- 2. The following prerequisite(s) must be installed in the order specified before installing FIT100803187.ps:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps
  - 1-17LVX9.ps
- 3. Do <u>NOT</u> install any of the following patch(es) after installing the **FIT100803187.ps** patch. If you must install any of the patch(es) below, do so <u>before</u> installing the **FIT100803187.ps** patch:
  - None
- 4. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 5. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

- 1 Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 2 Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file FIT100803187.ps to the Direct queue.
- 3 Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 4 From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.
- 5 Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 6 Verify that the **System Updates Log** section contains the patch number **FIT100803187**.

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3  |   |  | Dat                    | Date: 20-Jan-15 No.: RD0811        |   |  |
|--|---|--|------------------------|------------------------------------|---|--|
| Subject: Patch (FIT100698425.ps) release notes for<br>Color Controller E-7200 System Software<br>Version 1.0 |   |  | Prepared by: Ch        | isato Tsuji                        |   |  |
| From: 3rd Tech Service Sec. PP Tech Service Dept.  |   |  |                        |                                    |   |  |
| Classification:  | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Product Safety</li> </ul> | ☐ Part info<br>☐ Electric<br>☐ Transm<br>⊠ Other ( | ormai<br>al<br>iit/rec | tion Action<br>Servi<br>eive Retro | n required<br>ce manual revision<br>fit information |  |

This RTB has been issued to announce the release notes on the patch "**FIT100698425.ps**" for the Color Controller E-7200 **system software version 1.0**.

| Patch File      | Issue(s)   |  |  |  |  |
|-----------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| FIT100698425.ps | Linux OS was updated in the Fiery system software. |  |  |  |  |
|                 | This will fix the shell shock issue.               |  |  |  |  |

### Before installing FIT100698425.ps:

- 1. Known issues listed below, read before installing **FIT100698425.ps** patch:
  - None
- 2. The following prerequisite(s) must be installed in the order specified before installing FIT100698425.ps:
  - None
- 3. Do <u>NOT</u> install any of the following patch(es) after installing the **FIT100698425.ps** patch. If you must install any of the patch(es) below, do so <u>before</u> installing the **FIT100698425.ps** patch:
  - None
- 4. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 5. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

- 1 Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 2 Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file FIT100698425.ps to the Direct queue.
- 3 Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 4 From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.
- 5 Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 6 Verify that the **System Updates Log** section contains the patch number **FIT100698425**.

# Technical Bulletin

### **PAGE: 1/2**

| Model: V-C3  |   |  | Date: 04-Jun-15       |                       |                            | No.: RD081114                                       |
|--|---|--|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|---|
| Subject: Patch (FIT207983.ps) release notes for Color<br>Controller E-7200 System Software Version 1 |   |  |                       | Prepared              | by: Chi                    | sato Tsuji  |
| From: 1st Tech S   |   |  |                       |                       |                            |   |
| Classification:  | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Product Safety</li> </ul> | □ Part info<br>□ Electric<br>□ Transm<br>□ Other ( | ormat<br>al<br>it/rec | tion [<br>cive [<br>) | Action<br>Servic<br>Retrof | n required<br>ce manual revision<br>fit information |

This RTB has been issued to announce the release notes on the patch "**FIT207983.ps**" for the Color Controller E-7200 **system software version 1.0**.

| Patch File   | Issue(s)   |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| EIT207082 pc | Scan To SMB: "General SMB operation error" alert message appears and the |  |  |  |  |  |
| FI1207983.ps | Fiery cannot connect to the Mac OS X 10.9 shared folder.                 |  |  |  |  |  |

### Before installing FIT207983.ps:

- 1. Known issues listed below, read before installing **FIT207983.ps** patch:
  - None
- 2. The following prerequisite(s) must be installed in the order specified before installing FIT207983.ps:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps
  - 1-17LVX9.ps
  - 1-1GAS33.ps
  - FIT191304.ps
  - FIT191295.ps
- 3. Do <u>NOT</u> install any of the following patch(es) after installing the **FIT207983.ps** patch. If you must install any of the patch(es) below, do so <u>before</u> installing the **FIT207983.ps** patch:
  - None
- 4. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 5. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

Date: 04-Jun-15

- 1 Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 2 Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file **FIT207983.ps** to the **Direct** queue.
- 3 Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 4 From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.
- 5 Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 6 Verify that the **System Updates Log** section contains the patch number **FIT207983**.

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3 Date   |   |  | e: 12-Nov-15 | No.: RD081115   |   |
|--|---|--|--------------|-----------------|---|
| Subject: Patch (FIT101039161.ps) release notes for<br>Color Controller E-7200 System Software<br>Version 1.0 |   |  |              | Prepared by: Ch | isato Tsuji   |
| From: 1st Tech   | Service Sec. PP Tech Servi  |  |              |                 |   |
| Classification:  | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Product Safety</li> </ul> | eshooting<br>Inical<br>Part inform<br>Electrical<br>Dath<br>Transmit/r<br>Ct Safety<br>Ø Other ( |              | tion Actio      | n required<br>ce manual revision<br>fit information |

This RTB has been issued to announce the release notes on the patch "**FIT101039161.ps**" for the Color Controller E-7200 **system software version 1.0**.

| Patch File      | Issue(s)   |
|-----------------|--|
| FIT101039161.ps | If Composite overprint is set ON, crop marks are printed in color even if<br>applying Grey & Black processing. |

### Before installing FIT101039161.ps:

- 1. Known issues listed below, read before installing **FIT101039161.ps** patch:
  - None
- 2. The following prerequisite(s) must be installed in the order specified before installing FIT101039161.ps:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps
  - 1-17LVX9.ps
  - 1-1CYIAN.ps
- 3. Do <u>NOT</u> install any of the following patch(es) after installing the **FIT101039161.ps** patch. If you must install any of the patch(es) below, do so <u>before</u> installing the **FIT101039161.ps** patch:
  - None
- 4. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 5. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

- 1 Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 2 Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file FIT101039161.ps to the Direct queue.
- 3 Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.
- 4 From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.
- 5 Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.
- 6 Verify that the **System Updates Log** section contains the patch number **FIT101039161**.



| Model: V-C3 Dat                      |   |                  | Date                  | e: 12-Nov-15                        | No.: RD081116                                       |
|--------------------------------------|---|------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| Subject: Patch<br>Color C<br>Versior | (FIT101139548.ps) release<br>Controller E-7200 System So<br>1 1.0   | Prepared by: Chi | isato Tsuji           |                                     |   |
| From: 1st Tech                       | Service Sec. PP Tech Servi  |                  |                       |                                     |   |
| Classification:                      | cation:       Troubleshooting       Part inform         Mechanical       Electrical         Paper path       Transmit/         Product Safety       Other ( |                  | ormat<br>al<br>it/rec | tion Action<br>Servic<br>eive Retro | n required<br>ce manual revision<br>fit information |

This RTB has been issued to announce the release notes on the patch "**FIT101139548.ps**" for the Color Controller E-7200 **system software version 1.0**.

| Patch File      | Issue(s)  |
|-----------------|---|
| FIT101139548.ps | Patch to upgrade PHP, OpenSSL, Apache web server and Samba to below |
|                 | mentioned versions:   |
|                 | - Apache: 2.2.29  |
|                 | - OpenSSL: 0.9.8zf/ 1.0.1m  |
|                 | - PHP: 5.4.41   |
|                 | - Samba version : 3.0.37  |

### Before installing FIT101139548.ps:

- 1. Known issues listed below, read before installing **FIT101139548.ps** patch:
  - None
- 2. The following prerequisite(s) must be installed in the order specified before installing FIT101139548.ps:
  - 1-16OVJ9.ps
  - 1-17LVX9.ps
- 3. Do <u>NOT</u> install any of the following patch(es) after installing the **FIT101139548.ps** patch. If you must install any of the patch(es) below, do so <u>before</u> installing the **FIT101139548.ps** patch:
  - None
- 4. This patch is not exclusive, it can be installed along with other patches concurrently, and one server Reboot or Restart is sufficient for all patches to take effect on the system.
- 5. In the case where the customer needs to install a patch which was previously skipped in the patch order, it is necessary to reinstall the system.

- 1 Make sure that the Fiery controller has reached Idle.
- 2 Use Command WorkStation to import the patch file FIT101139548.ps to the Direct queue.
- 3 Before rebooting the system, to ensure that the patch file is completely processed, please wait up to 60 seconds or until Command WorkStation shows that the file is done processing.

# Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3 |      |         | Dat          | Date: 12-Nov-15 |          |        | No.: RD081116 |         |     |           |    |       |
|-------------|------|---------|--------------|-----------------|----------|--------|---------------|---------|-----|-----------|----|-------|
|             |      |         |              |                 |          |        |               |         |     |           |    |       |
| 4           | Erom | Command | Work Station | ahaaaa          | Convor > | Deheet | Sonior        | or from | the | Elony I C | חי | 00100 |

4 From Command WorkStation, choose Server-> Reboot Server, or from the Fiery LCD, select Restart Fiery -> Restart System.

5 Wait until the Fiery controller reaches Idle and print the Configuration page.

6 Verify that the **System Updates Log** section contains the patch number **FIT101139548**.

### **PAGE: 1/1**

| Model: V-C3   |                                |           | Dat    | e: 02-Mar- | -16        | No.: RD081117     |
|---|--------------------------------|-----------|--------|------------|------------|-------------------|
| Subject: P to P revision – Correct description of the ozone fan |                                |           |        |            | d by: Y. N | liyamoto          |
| From: 2nd Tech §  | Support Sec. Service Support D | ept.      |        |            |            |                   |
| Classification:   | Troubleshooting                | Part infe | ormat  | tion       | Action     | n required        |
|   | Mechanical                     | Electric  | al     |            | Servic     | e manual revision |
|   | Paper path                     | Transm    | it/rec | eive       | Retrof     | fit information   |
|   | Product Safety                 | Other (   |        | )          | Tier 2     |                   |

## **P-to-P Revision**

**RICOH** 

Descriptions in bold were corrected.

| Symbol | Incorrect Description | Correct Description | Index No. | P to P | Page |
|--------|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------|--------|------|
| M12    | Ozone Fan             | Ozone Fan(FC)       | 151       | C6     | 3/5  |
| M70    | Ozone Exhaust Fan     | Ozone Fan(Bk)       | 150       | C6     | 3/5  |



| Model: V-C3   |   |                                   | Dat                   | e: 22-Aug-16                       | No.: RD081118  |
|---|---|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| Subject: Important notice on installation of the new VBCU |   |                                   |                       | Prepared by: K.                    | Hamada   |
| From: 1st Tech S  | Service Sect., MFP/P Tech Serv  | ice Dept.                         |                       |                                    |  |
| Classification:   | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Product Safety</li> </ul> | Part info Electric Transm Other ( | ormat<br>al<br>it/rec | tion 🛛 Action 🔄 Serve eive 🔤 Retro | on required<br>vice manual revision<br>ofit information<br>2 |

### Important Notice on Installation of the New VBCU (P/N: D0815139)

Replace the VBCU based on the following procedure.

1. Set SP3-306 (Set toner supply coefficient) to the following values:

| SP3306 | I_Vt_Coef    | Default Value | SET TO: |
|--------|--------------|---------------|---------|
| -025   | I_Vt_Coef: K | 100           | 0       |
| -026   | I_Vt_Coef: M | 100           | 50      |
| -027   | I_Vt_Coef: C | 100           | 50      |
| -028   | I_Vt_Coef: Y | 100           | 50      |

Note: If the SPs are not set as in above, the machine may generate SC402.

2. Turn OFF the machine.

- 3. Replace the defective VBCU with the new VBCU (P/N: D0815139).
- 4. Turn ON the machine.
## Technical Bulletin

| Model: V-C3  |   |  | Date: 16-Dec-16       |                        | -16                                     | No.: RD081119                                  |  |
|--|---|--|-----------------------|------------------------|---|--|--|
| Subject: Manual Correction – SC542 added           |   |  |                       | Prepared by: A.Shigeta |   |  |  |
| From: 1st Tech Service Sec. MFP Tech Service Dept. |   |  |                       |                        |   |  |  |
| Classification:                                    | <ul> <li>Troubleshooting</li> <li>Mechanical</li> <li>Paper path</li> <li>Product Safety</li> </ul> | ☐ Part info<br>☐ Electric<br>☐ Transm<br>☐ Other ( | ormat<br>al<br>it/rec | ion<br>eive<br>)       | Action     Servic     Retrof     Tier 2 | required<br>æmanual revision<br>it information |  |

## **Service Manual Revision**

RICOH

Description of SC542 was added in the following section of the FSM:

## 3. Appendix: Service Call Conditions (Pg. 107)

|       | А | Heating roller thermistor (center) error  |  |  |  |  |
|-------|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| SC542 |   | An error was detected during any of the following:  |  |  |  |  |
|       |   | 1. Power on, Cover closing, Control of fusing heater, Abnormal behavior of the fusing drive |  |  |  |  |
|       |   | 2. Power on, Cover closing, Control of fusing heater  |  |  |  |  |
|       |   | 1. Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.  |  |  |  |  |
|       |   | Loose/defective thermistor  |  |  |  |  |
|       |   | <ul> <li>Abnormal input voltage</li> </ul>  |  |  |  |  |
|       |   | 2. Fusing temperature is not detected correctly due to:                                     |  |  |  |  |
|       |   | Loose harness connectors  |  |  |  |  |
|       |   | Defective heater  |  |  |  |  |